



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



## Select Plays of Shakspeare

*RUGBY EDITION. With an Introduction and Notes to each Play. Small 8vo.*

*As You Like It.* 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.

*Macbeth.* 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the same.

*Coriolanus.* 2s. 6d. ; paper cover, 2s.

Edited by Robert Whitelaw, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

*Hamlet.* 2s. 6d. ; paper covers, 2s.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A.

*The Tempest.*

[In preparation.]

Edited by J. Surtees Phillpotts, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.

*Much Ado about Nothing.*

[In preparation.]

Edited by the same.

\* \* Other Plays are in Preparation.

---

## Scenes from Greek Plays

*RUGBY EDITION.* Abridged and Adapted for the use of Schools, by Arthur Sidgwick, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

*Aristophanes.*

THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

*Euripides.*

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION.

ELECTRA.

Small 8vo 1s. 6d. each ; paper cover, 1s.

\* \* Other Plays are in Preparation.

---

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •

# **Catena Classicorum**

*A Series of Classical Authors. Edited by Members of both Universities, under the Direction of the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall; and the Rev. Charles Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.*

## *Sophoclis Tragoediae.*

**THE ELECTRA**, 3s. 6d.    **THE AJAX**, 3s. 6d.

Edited by R. C. Jebb, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.

## *Juvenalis Satirae.*

Edited by G. A. Simcox, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of Queen's College, Oxford. New Edition, revised. 5s.

## *Thucydidis Historia.*

Edited by Chas. Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Books I. and II., with Introductions. 6s.

## *Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.*

**THE OLYNTHIACS**, 2s. 6d.    **THE PHILIPPICS**, 3s.    **DE FALSA LEGATIONE**, 6s.

Edited by G. H. Heslop, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford; Head Master of St. Bees.

## *Aristophanis Comoediae.*

**THE ACHARNIANS** and **THE KNIGHTS**, 4s.    **THE CLOUDS**, 3s. 6d.    **THE WASPS**, 3s. 6d.

Edited by W. C. Green, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at Rugby School.

An Edition of **THE ACHARNIANS** and **THE KNIGHTS**, Revised and especially adapted for Use in Schools. 4s.

## *Isocratis Orationes.*

**AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS**, 4s. 6d.

Edited by John Edwin Sandys, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Classical Lecturer at Jesus College, Cambridge.

## *Persii Satirae.*

Edited by A. Pretor, M.A., Fellow of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge, Classical Lecturer of Trinity Hall. 3s. 6d.

## *Homeri Ilias.*

Edited by S. H. Reynolds, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College, Oxford. Books I. to XII. 6s.

## *Terenti Comoediae.*

**ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS**, 4s. 6d.

Edited by T. L. Papillon, M.A., Fellow of New College, Oxford, late Fellow of Merton.

## *Demosthenis Orationes.*

**DE CORONA**, 5s.

Edited by the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.

## *Herodoti Historia.*

Edited by H. G. Woods, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.  
Book I. 6s. Book II. 5s.

---

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •



6000962068

AN ELEMENTARY  
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE,  
LATE LECTURER AT ST. PETER'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

1875

305. 9. 71.

## RIVINGTONS

<b>Cambridge</b>	.	.	.	.	.	<i>Trinity Street</i>
<b>Oxford</b>	.	.	.	.	.	<i>High Street</i>
<b>London</b>	.	.	.	.	.	<i>Waterloo Place</i>

## P R E F A C E.

I HAVE attempted in this book to set forth simultaneously the elementary facts of Latin Grammar, and the fundamental principles of Latin Composition.

Commencing with the simplest forms of the Simple Sentence, I have followed that which seemed to me the order best adapted to advance the Student's knowledge of the forms of Latin words, and the structure of Latin periods. How far this order differs from that adopted in the Grammars which are commonly used in Schools will be seen from the Table of Contents.

I have endeavoured to make a careful selection of words in common use for the Vocabularies, and of passages to illustrate the ordinary rules of Syntax. The Prose Examples are chiefly taken from the writings of Cicero, Caesar, and Livy. To verses from the Latin Poets I have generally attached the name of the author.

After page 103 I have not, as a rule, given any translation of the Latin sentences, because the student, after a careful study of Parts I. and II., ought to be able (with the aid of



a small dictionary) to translate such easy passages as those which he will find in the latter half of this book.

I shall be grateful for any hints for the improvement of my work from any reader who may be disposed to give me advice. I have already received much help from suggestions made by the Rev. F. Heppenstall, Headmaster of Sedbergh School, and by his late Pupils in the Sixth Form of the Perse School in Cambridge.

J. HAMBLIN SMITH.

42 TRUMPINGTON STREET, CAMBRIDGE,

*September 1875.*

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

	PAGE
The Letters and Sounds, . . . . .	1
Elements of the Simple Sentence, . . . . .	4
Inflections of the Latin Verb, . . . . .	5
Imperfect Tenses of the Indicative, . . . . .	6
Declensions of Nouns, . . . . .	9
First Class of Nouns, . . . . .	10
Stems in <i>A</i> , . . . . .	10
Stems in <i>O</i> , . . . . .	12
The Cases as parts of the Simple Sentence, . . . . .	16
Prepositions, . . . . .	19
The Locative Case, . . . . .	20
Adjectives with Stems in <i>A</i> and <i>O</i> , . . . . .	20
The Copula in Latin, . . . . .	23
The Adjective as part of the Simple Sentence, . . . . .	23
Second Class of Nouns, . . . . .	24
<i>I</i> -Nouns, . . . . .	25
Adjectives with <i>I</i> -Stems, . . . . .	27
Consonant-Nouns, . . . . .	29
Adjectives of One Termination, . . . . .	38
Stems in <i>U</i> , . . . . .	40
Declension of <i>E</i> -Nouns, . . . . .	42
Perfect Tenses of the Indicative, . . . . .	43
Extended List of Prepositions, . . . . .	47
Adverbs, . . . . .	48
Adverbial Expressions, . . . . .	49
Attributive Expressions, . . . . .	50
Expansion of the Simple Sentence, . . . . .	52
Verbal Nouns, . . . . .	53
1. The Infinitive, . . . . .	53
2. The Supines, . . . . .	54
3. The Gerunds, . . . . .	55

	PAGE
Verbal Adjectives, . . . . .	56
1. The Gerundive, . . . . .	56
2. The Participles, . . . . .	57
The Imperative Mood, . . . . .	58
The Subjunctive Mood, . . . . .	59
Interjections, . . . . .	62

## PART II.—THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

Co-ordinate and Subordinate Sentences, . . . . .	63
Conjunctions, . . . . .	63
Co-ordinative Conjunctions, . . . . .	63
Pronouns, . . . . .	67
1. The Personal Pronouns, . . . . .	67
2. The Possessive Pronouns, . . . . .	68
3. The Conjunctive Pronouns <i>Is</i> and <i>Qui</i> , . . . . .	68
4. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i> , . . . . .	70
5. The Indefinite <i>Quis</i> , . . . . .	71
6. The Demonstrative Pronouns, . . . . .	71
Pronominal Adjectives, . . . . .	74
Subordinative Conjunctions, . . . . .	75
Sequence of Tenses, . . . . .	76
Direct Questions, . . . . .	77
Indirect Questions, . . . . .	78
Comparison of Adjectives, . . . . .	78
Comparison of Adverbs, . . . . .	82
Numerals, . . . . .	84
Space, . . . . .	86
Time, . . . . .	87
Adverbial Expressions of Time, . . . . .	88
Temporal Conjunctions, . . . . .	88
Price and Value, . . . . .	91
The Roman Calendar, . . . . .	91

## PART III.—VERBS.

Conjugation of <i>Sum</i> , and its Compounds, . . . . .	94
Conjugation of <i>Possum</i> , . . . . .	95
<i>Sum</i> and its Compounds in Sentences, . . . . .	96
Active Voice of First Conjugation, . . . . .	98
"    Second Conjugation, . . . . .	99
"    Third Conjugation, . . . . .	100
"    Fourth Conjugation, . . . . .	101

# CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
Conjugation of <i>Capio</i> , . . . . .	102
The Passive Voice, . . . . .	102
Passive Voice of First Conjugation, . . . . .	104
"    Second Conjugation, . . . . .	105
"    Third Conjugation, . . . . .	106
"    Fourth Conjugation, . . . . .	107
Deponent Verbs, . . . . .	108
First Conjugation of Deponents, . . . . .	109
Second Conjugation of Deponents, . . . . .	110
Third Conjugation of Deponents, . . . . .	111
Fourth Conjugation of Deponents, . . . . .	112
Conjugation of <i>Patio</i> , . . . . .	113
List of Deponents in common use, . . . . .	113
Conjugation of <i>Volo</i> , <i>Nolo</i> , and <i>Malo</i> , . . . . .	115
Conjugation of <i>Fero</i> , . . . . .	116
Conjugation of <i>Feror</i> , . . . . .	117
Compounds of <i>Fero</i> , . . . . .	118
Uses of <i>Possum</i> and other irregular Verbs, . . . . .	118
Conjugation of <i>Eo</i> , . . . . .	119
Compounds of <i>Eo</i> , . . . . .	120
Uses of <i>Eo</i> and its compounds, . . . . .	121
Conjugation of <i>Fio</i> , . . . . .	122
Conjugation of <i>Edo</i> , . . . . .	122
Unipersonal Verbs, . . . . .	123
Examples of Verbs used impersonally, . . . . .	124
Defective Verbs, . . . . .	125
Table of Verbs, . . . . .	127
First Conjugation, . . . . .	127
Second Conjugation, . . . . .	128
Third Conjugation, . . . . .	130
Inchoative Verbs, . . . . .	138
Fourth Conjugation, . . . . .	139

## PART IV.—CASE-CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Accusative and Infinitive, . . . . .	140
2. Cases depending on Adjectives, . . . . .	141
Genitive with Adjectives, . . . . .	141
Dative with Adjectives, . . . . .	143
Ablative with Adjectives, . . . . .	144
3. Cases depending on Verbs, . . . . .	146
Copulative Verbs, . . . . .	146
Accusative with Verbs, . . . . .	146
Genitive with Verbs, . . . . .	148

	PAGE
Dative with Verbs, . . . . .	149
Ablative with Verbs, . . . . .	150
4. The Ablative Absolute, . . . . .	151
5. Genitive with Adverbs, . . . . .	153

## PART V.—PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions with Accusative, . . . . .	154
Prepositions with Ablative, . . . . .	161
Prepositions in Composition, . . . . .	164

## PART VI.—DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

Subordinative Conjunctions, . . . . .	168
1. Final Conjunctions, . . . . .	168
2. Consecutive Conjunctions, . . . . .	170
3. Causal Conjunctions, . . . . .	172
4. Temporal Conjunctions, . . . . .	173
5. Concessive Conjunctions, . . . . .	174
6. Comparative Conjunctions, . . . . .	175
7. Conditional Conjunctions, . . . . .	175
Conditional Sentences, . . . . .	175
The Relative Pronoun <i>Qui</i> , . . . . .	178
Compound Pronouns, . . . . .	183
Compounds of <i>Uter</i> and <i>Alter</i> , . . . . .	185
Derivatives of <i>Noster</i> and <i>Cuius</i> , . . . . .	186
Correlation of Clauses, . . . . .	186
Oblique Narration, . . . . .	188
The Historic Infinitive, . . . . .	192
Disjunctive Questions, . . . . .	193
Arrangement of Words in Sentences, . . . . .	194

## PART VII.—PROSODY.

1. Rules of Quantity, . . . . .	200
2. Rules of Metre, . . . . .	205

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

## PART I.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

#### THE LETTERS AND SOUNDS.

1. The **Latin Alphabet** in the year 100 B.C. consisted of twenty-one letters ; these were *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u (v), x*. Words from the Greek brought in *y* and *z*. There was no *j* and no *w*.

#### VOWEL SOUNDS.

2. The **Latin vowels** were *a, e, i, o, u*.

The mark *—* placed over a vowel denotes that the vowel is *long*.

The mark *~* placed over a vowel denotes that the vowel is *short*.

The vowels were perhaps sounded thus :—

*a* long, like the *a* in father : as *māter, mother*.

*a* short, like the *a* in arise : as *pāter, father*.

*e* long, like the *e* in fame : as *fēmina, woman*.

*e* short, like the *e* in egg : as *ēgo, I*.

*i* long, like the *i* in marine : as *finis, end*.

*i* short, like the *i* in pity : as *fides, faith*.

*o* long, like the *o* in rode : as *dōnum, gift*.

*o* short, like the *o* in modest : as *mōdus, manner*.

*u* long, like the *oo* in rood : as *lūmen, light*.

/ *u* short, like the *u* in rub : as *sūbitus, sudden*.



6000962068

AN ELEMENTARY  
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE,  
LATE LECTURER AT ST. PETER'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

1875

305. 9. 71.



**ELEMENTS OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.**

7. A **Noun** is the name of a being or thing, as *man, dog, tree, stone*. All beings and things have certain qualities, which we call **Attributes**, such as *wisdom, strength, beauty*.

A *concrete* noun is the name of a being or thing, as *man, tree*.

An *abstract* noun is the name of an attribute, as *strength, beauty*.

8. A **Pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun. For example, the speaker describes himself by the pronoun *I*, the person to whom he speaks by the pronoun *you*, and the person of whom he speaks by the pronoun *he* or *she*, and these forms are called **Personal Pronouns**.

9. An **Adjective** is a word implying an attribute : thus when we say, *Gold is weighty*, we ascribe to the substance gold the attribute weightiness.

10. To form a sentence we must have—

(1.) Something to speak about : this is called the **Subject**.

(2.) Something to say of it : this is called the **Predicate**.

Thus in the sentence, *Gold is weighty*, the noun *gold* is the subject, the adjective *weighty* is the predicate, and the word *is*, connecting the subject and the predicate, is called the **Copula** or **Link**.

11. A **Verb** is a word used to make a statement about the *condition or action* of the subject of which we are speaking.

12. There are two great classes of verbs :—

(1.) Those which make a statement about the *condition* of the subject.

(2.) Those which make a statement about the *action* of the subject upon some person or thing.

The former are called *Intransitive*, the latter *Transitive* verbs.

13. A subject and an intransitive verb are sufficient for a sentence ; thus we may say, *Gold glitters*.

With a subject and a transitive verb we cannot form a com-

plete sentence, for we want some word to express the effect of the action, and such a word is called the **Object** of the verb.

Thus in the sentence, *Bees make honey*, the word *honey* is called the object of the transitive verb *make*.

14. There are three forms of the Simple Sentence—

- I. Subject + Copula + Predicate, . . . *Gold is weighty.*
- II. Subject + Intransitive verb, . . . *Gold glitters.*
- III. Subject + Transitive verb + Object, *Bees make honey.*

### INFLEXIONS OF THE LATIN VERB.

15. Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Verbs in Latin have *inflexions*, that is, changes made in them to fit them to be parts of a sentence. The part of each word that remains when the inflexions are removed is called the **Stem**.

16. We will consider first some of the **inflexions** of the verb.

The simplest form of speech is the command, *Go, Stop, Come*. The Latin equivalents of these words are *I, Stā, Vēni*. This mode of speech is called the **Imperative Mood**. In Latin the Imperative Mood presents the stem of a verb in its simplest form.

17. By adding the syllable *rě* (in a few instances *řř*) to the stem we obtain the form called the **Present Infinitive**, expressing condition or action without any restriction of number or person. Thus:—

#### IMPERATIVE.

*i, go.*  
*stā, stop.*  
*vēni, come.*  
*dic, tell.*

#### PRESENT INFINITIVE.

*ire, to go.*  
*stāre, to stand.*  
*venire, to come.*  
*dicěř, to tell.*

### CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

18. Latin verbs are arranged in four classes, called *Conjugations*, distinguished by the vowel in the last syllable but one of the Present Infinitive.

	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>First Conjugation,</i>	āmā, <i>love.</i>	āmārē, <i>to love.</i>
<i>Second Conjugation,</i>	mōnē, <i>advise.</i>	mōnērē, <i>to advise.</i>
<i>Third Conjugation,</i>	rēgē, <i>rule.</i>	rēgērē, <i>to rule.</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation,</i>	audi, <i>hear.</i>	audirē, <i>to hear.</i>

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

19. The Indicative Mood includes those forms of the verb which are used in making statements *of fact*. It has in Latin six Tenses, two of which have reference to the *present* time, two to the *past*, and two to the *future*. One of each of these pairs of tenses is used in describing actions that are incomplete, and one of each in describing actions that are complete.

Thus the Latin verb has in the Indicative Mood—

#### THREE IMPERFECT TENSES.

<i>Imperfect-Present,</i>	for action incomplete at the <i>present</i> time.
<i>Imperfect-Past,</i>	..... a <i>past</i> .....
<i>Imperfect-Future,</i>	..... a <i>future</i> .....

#### THREE PERFECT TENSES.

<i>Perfect-Present,</i>	for action complete at the <i>present</i> time.
<i>Perfect-Past,</i>	..... a <i>past</i> .....
<i>Perfect-Future,</i>	..... a <i>future</i> .....

Each tense is divided into two Numbers, Singular and Plural. In each number there are three Persons.

### 20. THE IMPERFECT TENSES.

1. The **Imperfect-Present** is used to denote incomplete action at the present time, as *Amo, I love, or I am loving.*

2. The **Imperfect-Past** is used to denote incomplete action

in time past, as *Amābam, I was loving*; *Audiēbam, I used to hear*.

3. The **Imperfect-Future** is used to denote incomplete action in time to come, as *Amābo, I shall love*; *Scribam, I shall be writing*.

NOTE.—1 and 3 may be used for *momentary* action, for the Latin tongue has no distinct form for the momentary “I strike,” to distinguish it from the continuous “I am striking.”

## 21. INDICATIVE MOOD.

### IMPERFECT TENSES.

#### Conjugation 1.

##### PRESENT.

- SING. 1. *āmō, I love.*  
 2. *āmās, thou lovest.*  
 3. *āmāt, he (she, it) loves.*  
 PLUR. 1. *āmāmūs, we love.*  
 2. *āmātīs, ye love.*  
 3. *āmant, they love.*

##### PAST.

- SING. 1. *āmābam, I was loving.*  
 2. *āmābās, thou wast loving.*  
 3. *āmābāt, he was loving.*  
 PLUR. 1. *āmābāmūs, we were loving.*  
 2. *āmābātīs, ye were loving.*  
 3. *āmābant, they were loving.*

##### FUTURE.

- SING. 1. *āmābō, I shall love.*  
 2. *āmābīs, thou wilt love.*  
 3. *āmābīt, he will love.*  
 PLUR. 1. *āmābīmūs, we shall love.*  
 2. *āmābītīs, ye will love.*  
 3. *āmābunt, they will love.*

#### Conjugation 2.

##### PRESENT.

- mōnēō, I advise.*  
*mōnēs, thou advisest.*  
*mōnēt, he (she, it) advises.*  
*mōnēmūs, we advise.*  
*mōnētīs, ye advise.*  
*mōnent, they advise.*

##### PAST.

- mōnēbam, I was advising.*  
*mōnēbās, thou wert advising.*  
*mōnēbāt, he was advising.*  
*mōnēbāmūs, we were advising.*  
*mōnēbātīs, ye were advising.*  
*mōnēbant, they were advising.*

##### FUTURE.

- mōnēbō, I shall advise.*  
*mōnēbīs, thou wilt advise.*  
*mōnēbīt, he will advise.*  
*mōnēbīmūs, we shall advise.*  
*mōnēbītīs, ye will advise.*  
*mōnēbunt, they will advise.*

Conjugation 3.		Conjugation 4.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SING.	1. rēgō, <i>I rule.</i>	audīō, <i>I hear.</i>	
	2. rēgīs, <i>thou rulest.</i>		audīs, <i>thou hearest.</i>
	3. rēgīt, <i>he (she, it) rules.</i>		audīt, <i>he (she, it) hears.</i>
PLUR.	1. rēgīmūs, <i>we rule.</i>	audīmūs, <i>we hear.</i>	
	2. rēgītīs, <i>ye rule.</i>		audītīs, <i>ye hear.</i>
	3. rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i>		audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>
PAST.		PAST.	
SING.	1. rēgēbam, <i>I was ruling.</i>	audiēbam, <i>I was hearing.</i>	
	2. rēgēbās, <i>thou wast ruling.</i>		audiēbās, <i>thou wast hearing.</i>
	3. rēgēbāt, <i>he was ruling.</i>		audiēbāt, <i>he was hearing.</i>
PLUR.	1. rēgēbāmūs, <i>we were ruling.</i>	audiēbāmūs, <i>we were hearing.</i>	
	2. rēgēbātīs, <i>ye were ruling.</i>		audiēbātīs, <i>ye were hearing.</i>
	3. rēgēbant, <i>they were ruling.</i>		audiēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
SING.	1. rēgam, <i>I shall rule.</i>	audiām, <i>I shall hear.</i>	
	2. rēgēs, <i>thou wilt rule.</i>		audiēs, <i>thou wilt hear.</i>
	3. rēgēt, <i>he will rule.</i>		audiēt, <i>he will hear.</i>
PLUR.	1. rēgēmūs, <i>we shall rule.</i>	audiēmūs, <i>we shall hear.</i>	
	2. rēgētīs, <i>ye will rule.</i>		audiētīs, <i>ye will hear.</i>
	3. rēgent, <i>they will rule.</i>		audient, <i>they will hear.</i>

22. The following list includes all the Verbs used in the illustrative sentences up to Sect. 66 :—

#### First Conjugation.

ārāre, <i>to plough.</i>	sēcāre, <i>to cut.</i>
dēcōrāre, <i>to adorn.</i>	servāre, <i>to preserve.</i>
laudāre, <i>to praise.</i>	sōnāre, <i>to resound.</i>
narrāre, <i>to relate.</i>	spectāre, <i>to behold.</i>
nātāre, <i>to swim.</i>	stāre, <i>to stand.</i>
ornāre, <i>to decorate.</i>	vitāre, <i>to avoid.</i>
pārāre, <i>to prepare.</i>	vōcāre, <i>to call.</i>
portāre, <i>to carry.</i>	vōlāre, <i>to fly.</i>

*N.B.*—Dāre, *to give*, has the ā short in its tenses, as dābam, dābo.

**Second Conjugation.**

dēlēre, <i>to destroy.</i>	praeberē, <i>to furnish.</i>
dōcēre, <i>to teach.</i>	ridēre, <i>to laugh.</i>
fōvēre, <i>to cherish.</i>	sēdēre, <i>to sit.</i>
hābēre, <i>to have.</i>	tēnēre, <i>to hold.</i>
iācēre, <i>to lie.</i>	terrēre, <i>alarm.</i>
iūbēre, <i>order.</i>	tīmēre, <i>to fear.</i>
mānēre, <i>to remain or await.</i>	vīrēre, <i>to be green.</i>
pātēre, <i>to be open.</i>	vidēre, <i>to see.</i>

**Third Conjugation.**

āgēre, <i>to drive.</i>	mittēre, <i>to send.</i>
cādēre, <i>to fall.</i>	pētēre, <i>to aim at, seek.</i>
cānēre, <i>to sing.</i>	quaerēre, <i>to seek.</i>
carpēre, <i>to pluck.</i>	scribēre, <i>to write.</i>
discēre, <i>to learn.</i>	spernēre, <i>to despise.</i>
dūcēre, <i>to lead.</i>	surgēre, <i>to rise.</i>
fluēre, <i>to flow.</i>	trādēre, <i>to deliver, hand over.</i>

**Fourth Conjugation.**

āpērire, <i>to open.</i>	mūnīre, <i>to construct, to fortify.</i>
dormīre, <i>to sleep.</i>	nūtrīre, <i>to nourish.</i>
haurīre, <i>to drain.</i>	venīre, <i>to come.</i>
lēnīre, <i>to assuage.</i>	vincīre, <i>to bind.</i>

**DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.**

23. The relation in which a noun stands to another word in a sentence is usually expressed in English by *placing before* the noun one of the words which are therefore called **Prepositions**, such as *of, to, for, by, with.*

The relation in which a Noun stands to another word in a sentence is expressed in Latin by affixing particular terminations to the stem of the noun. The Noun is then said to be in a certain **Case**.

Prepositions are used in Latin to define more clearly the relations signified by the cases.

**CASES.**

24. The Latin Noun has six cases, which are called *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.*

**NUMBERS.**

25. Nouns have usually two numbers, **Singular**, referring to one person or thing, as *porta*, a *gate*; **Plural**, referring to more than one, as *portae*, *gates*.

**GENDERS.**

26. Nouns in Latin are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter (that is, of *neither* Gender). A Noun which may be Masculine or Feminine is called Common.

*N.B.*—In the lists of nouns that follow,  
 Masculine Nouns have the first letter a capital, as *Rex*, *king*.  
 Feminine Nouns have the first letter small, as *regina*, *queen*.  
 Neuter Nouns are printed in italics, as *regnum*, a kingdom.

**DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.**

27. Rules of *declension* are rules for the formation of cases in particular nouns.

There are two chief classes of Latin Nouns :

I. Nouns whose stems end in *A* or *O*.

II. Nouns whose stems end in *I*, a consonant, or *U*.

For the few Nouns with stems in *E*, see Section 66.

**28. FIRST CLASS OF NOUNS.****STEMS IN A.**

Declension of *porta*, *gate*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> portā.	<i>Nom.</i> portae.
<i>Gen.</i> portae.	<i>Gen.</i> portārum.
<i>Dat.</i> portae.	<i>Dat.</i> portis.
<i>Acc.</i> portam.	<i>Acc.</i> portās.
<i>Voc.</i> portā.	<i>Voc.</i> portae.
<i>Abl.</i> portā.	<i>Abl.</i> portis.

NOTE 1.—The final *a* is short in all Noun cases except the ablative of the *A* declension.

NOTE 2.—The stem of a Noun is always seen in the Genitive Plural. The last letter of the stem is called the Character of the noun. It is indicated in the type-forms of the Declensions by a capital, as *portArum*.

### 29. Nouns of the *A* declension are mostly Feminine.

In the following list of Feminine Nouns of this declension in common use, the English meanings are given without the words *a*, *an*, or *the*, because, there being no Article in Latin, *ala* may mean "a wing" or "the wing," according to the context of the sentence.

### FEMININE NOUNS OF THE *A* DECLENSION.

*āla*, wing.  
*ancilla*, handmaid.  
*āqua*, water.  
*āquila*, eagle.  
*āra*, altar.  
*aura*, breeze.  
*barba*, beard.  
*causa*, cause.  
*cēna*, dinner.  
*cōma*, hair.  
*cōrōna*, garland.  
*cūra*, care.  
*dextra*, right-hand.  
*dōmīna*, mistress.  
*ēdēra*, ivy.  
*ēpistūla*, letter.  
*fābūla*, story.  
*fāma*, rumour.  
*fēmina*, woman.  
*fēra*, wild-beast.  
*flamma*, flame.

*forma*, shape.  
*fossa*, ditch.  
*fūga*, flight.  
*gemma*, jewel.  
*glōria*, fame.  
*gutta*, drop.  
*hasta*, spear.  
*iānua*, door.  
*insula*, island.  
*ira*, anger.  
*iustitia*, justice.  
*lāna*, wool.  
*lingua*, tongue.  
*lūna*, moon.  
*mensa*, table.  
*mōra*, delay.  
*mūsa*, muse.  
*nātūra*, nature.  
*nympha*, nymph.  
*ōpēra*, labour.  
*ōra*, coast.

*pēcūnia*, money.  
*poena*, penalty.  
*puella*, girl.  
*rāna*, frog.  
*rēgina*, queen.  
*ripa*, bank.  
*rōsa*, rose.  
*rōta*, wheel.  
*sāgitta*, arrow.  
*silva*, wood.  
*sinistra*, left-hand.  
*stella*, star.  
*taeda*, torch.  
*terra*, earth.  
*tūba*, trumpet.  
*turba*, crowd.  
*unda*, wave.  
*umbra*, shade.  
*vacca*, cow.  
*vīa*, way.  
*vita*, life.



To this declension belong many names of countries, as Eurōpa, Africa, Asia, Italia, Graecia, Britannia, Sicilia; and cities, as Rōma, Sparta, Căpŭa.

The following are in the plural only :—

<i>divītia</i> , <i>riches</i> .	<i>minae</i> , <i>threats</i> .
<i>hābēnae</i> , <i>reins</i> .	<i>nūgae</i> , <i>trifles</i> .
<i>insīdiae</i> , <i>ambush</i> .	<i>tēnēbrae</i> , <i>darkness</i> .

Also names of some cities, as Athenae, Thebae, Syracusae. *dea*, *goddess*, and *filia*, *daughter*, have the dative and ablative plural *deābus* and *filiābus*.

The following have a special meaning in the plural :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>cōpia</i> , <i>plenty</i> .	<i>copiae</i> , <i>troops, forces, stores</i> .
<i>fortūna</i> , <i>fortune</i> .	<i>fortunae</i> , <i>property</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , <i>favour</i> .	<i>gratiae</i> , <i>thanks</i> .
<i>littera</i> , <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> .	<i>litterae</i> , <i>an epistle, literature</i> .

### MASCULINE NOUNS WITH A-STEMS.

30. Masculine nouns of this declension in common use are such as denote the occupations of men, as—

<i>Agrīcōla</i> , <i>husbandman</i> ,	<i>Incōla</i> , <i>inhabitant</i> ,
<i>Auriga</i> , <i>charioteer</i> ,	<i>Nauta</i> , <i>sailor</i> ,
<i>Collēga</i> , <i>colleague</i> ,	<i>Poēta</i> , <i>poet</i> ,
<i>Conviva</i> , <i>guest</i> ,	<i>Scriba</i> , <i>secretary</i> ,

and many names of men, as Cinna, Iugurtha, Murena, Sulla. They are declined like *porta*, thus :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Scriba</i> .	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Scribae</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Scribae</i> .	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Scribārum</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Scribae</i> .	<i>Dat.</i> <i>Scribis</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Scribam</i> .	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Scribās</i> .
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Scriba</i> .	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Scribae</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Scribā</i> .	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Scribis</i> .

### STEMS IN O.

31. This declension contains nouns ending in *-ūs*, chiefly

masculine, in *-er*, masculine, and *-um*, neuter, as *Dominus*, *lord* ; *Puer*, *boy* ; *Magister*, *master* ; and *signum*, *sign*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Dōmīnus.</i>	<i>Puer.</i>	<i>Magister.</i>	<i>signum.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dominī.</i>	<i>Puerī.</i>	<i>Magistrī.</i>	<i>signī.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dominō.</i>	<i>Puerō.</i>	<i>Magistrō.</i>	<i>signō.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dominum.</i>	<i>Puerum.</i>	<i>Magistrum.</i>	<i>signum.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Dominē.</i>	<i>Puer.</i>	<i>Magister.</i>	<i>signum.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Domino.</i>	<i>Puero.</i>	<i>Magistro.</i>	<i>signo.</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Dominī.</i>	<i>Puerī.</i>	<i>Magistrī.</i>	<i>signī.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dominōrum.</i>	<i>Puerōrum.</i>	<i>Magistrōrum.</i>	<i>signōrum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dominīs.</i>	<i>Puerīs.</i>	<i>Magistrīs.</i>	<i>signīs.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dominōs.</i>	<i>Puerōs.</i>	<i>Magistrōs.</i>	<i>signī.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Dominī.</i>	<i>Puerī.</i>	<i>Magistrī.</i>	<i>signī.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Dominis.</i>	<i>Pueris.</i>	<i>Magistris.</i>	<i>signis.</i>

NOTE 1.—The words *Puer* and *Magister* are abbreviated forms of *Puerus* and *Magisterus*.

NOTE 2.—In the declension of *Magister* a letter is dropped, *Magistri* for *Magisteri*, and so on.

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE O DECLENSION.

1. Declined like DOMINUS.

<i>Agnus, lamb.</i>	<i>Fūmus, smoke.</i>	<i>Nāsus, nose.</i>
<i>Ānīmus, spirit.</i>	<i>Gallus, cock.</i>	<i>Nātus, son.</i>
<i>Annus, year.</i>	<i>Glādius, sword.</i>	<i>Nīdus, nest.</i>
<i>Āsinus, ass.</i>	<i>Haedus, kid.</i>	<i>Nōdus, knot.</i>
<i>Campus, plain.</i>	<i>Hortus, garden.</i>	<i>Nūmērus, number.</i>
<i>Cāpillus, hair.</i>	<i>Lectus, couch.</i>	<i>Nummus, coin.</i>
<i>Cervus, stag.</i>	<i>Lēgātus, envoy, lieutenant.</i>	<i>Ōcūlus, eye.</i>
<i>Chōrus, band.</i>	<i>Lūcus, grove.</i>	<i>Pontus, sea.</i>
<i>Cibus, food.</i>	<i>Lūdus, sport.</i>	<i>Pōpūlus, people.</i>
<i>Corvus, crow.</i>	<i>Lūpus, wolf.</i>	<i>Porcus, hog.</i>
<i>Dīgītus, finger.</i>	<i>Mōdus, manner.</i>	<i>Pullus, young animal.</i>
<i>Dōlus, trick.</i>	<i>Morbus, disease.</i>	<i>Rāmus, bough.</i>
<i>Ēquūs, horse.</i>	<i>Mundus, universe.</i>	<i>Rīvus, stream.</i>
<i>Flāvius, river.</i>	<i>Mūrus, wall.</i>	<i>Rōgus, funeral pile.</i>
<i>Fōcus, hearth.</i>	<i>Muscus, moss.</i>	<i>Servus, slave.</i>

Somnus, <i>sleep.</i>	Thälāmus, <i>chamber.</i>	Ventus, <i>wind.</i>
Succus, <i>juice.</i>	Tōrus, <i>bed.</i>	Vicus, <i>village.</i>
Sulcus, <i>furrow.</i>	Ūmērus, <i>shoulder.</i>	Vitūlus, <i>calf.</i>
Taurus, <i>bull.</i>	Ursus, <i>bear.</i>	

Many names of Roman men belong to this declension, as Marcus, Clōdīus, Pompeius; also some rivers, as Rhēnus, *the Rhine*, and Rhōdānus, *the Rhone*; and winds, as Eurūs, *East-wind*, and Nōtus, *South-wind*. Some towns are in the plural only, as Gabii, Tarquinii, Falerii, Delphi, Philippi.

The following are Feminine Nouns of this declension :—

*Names of Trees.*

alnus, <i>alder.</i>	fāgus, <i>beech.</i>	plātānus, <i>plane.</i>
buxus, <i>box.</i>	fraxīnus, <i>ash.</i>	pōmus, <i>apple.</i>
cēdrus, <i>cedar.</i>	mōrus, <i>mulberry.</i>	pōpūlus, <i>poplar.</i>
cērāsus, <i>cherry.</i>	ornus, <i>mountain-ash.</i>	taxus, <i>yew.</i>
cōrūlus, <i>hazel.</i>	pīrus, <i>pear.</i>	ulmus, <i>elm.</i>

Names of some countries and islands in *-us* are feminine, as *Ægyptus*, *Cyprus*.

*hūmus*, *ground*, is feminine, and only found in the singular.

*pēlāgus*, *the open sea*, and *vīrus*, *poison*, are neuter, and have no plural.

*Vulgus*, *common people*, is masculine or neuter, and has no plural.

*Contracted Forms.*

The genitive singular of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* is often contracted : thus—

<i>Nom.</i> Filius, <i>son</i> ;	<i>Gen.</i> Filii or Fili.
<i>Nom.</i> ingēnium, <i>disposition</i> ;	<i>Gen.</i> ingenii or ingeni.

The vocative singular of names in *-ius* is contracted into *-i*, as Fili, Mercūri, Pompei.

The genitive plural is contracted in some words, as nummum for nummorum, especially in words denoting weights and measures.

*Declension of Deus, God.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> Deus.	<i>Nom.</i> Dei, Dii or Di.
<i>Gen.</i> Dei.	<i>Gen.</i> Deorum or Deum.
<i>Dat.</i> Deo.	<i>Dat.</i> Deis, Diis or Dis.
<i>Acc.</i> Deum.	<i>Acc.</i> Deos.
<i>Voc.</i> Deus.	<i>Voc.</i> Dei, Dii or Di.
<i>Abl.</i> Deo.	<i>Abl.</i> Deis, Diis or Dis.

2. *Like Puer.*Gēner, *son-in-law.*Sōcer, *father-in-law.*Liber, *a name of Bacchus (only in the singular).*Liberi, *children of free Romans (only in the plural).*3. *Like Magister.*

Āger, <i>field,</i>	Cancer, <i>crab,</i>	Fāber, <i>smith,</i>
Āper, <i>boar,</i>	Cāper, <i>he-goat,</i>	Liber, <i>book,</i>
Arbiter, <i>umpire,</i>	Cōlūber, <i>adder,</i>	Mīnister, <i>assistant,</i>
Auster, <i>south-wind,</i>	Culter, <i>knife,</i>	Ōleaster, <i>wild-olive,</i>

and many Proper Names, as Alexander, Teucer, and Ister, the Danube.

*Declension of Vir, man.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> Vir.	<i>Nom.</i> Viri.
<i>Gen.</i> Viri.	<i>Gen.</i> Virorum or Virum.
<i>Dat.</i> Viro.	<i>Dat.</i> Viris.
<i>Acc.</i> Virum.	<i>Acc.</i> Viros.
<i>Voc.</i> Vir.	<i>Voc.</i> Viri.
<i>Abl.</i> Viro.	<i>Abl.</i> Viris.

4. *Like Signum.*

antrum, <i>cave.</i>	collum, <i>neck.</i>	fōlium, <i>leaf.</i>
ārātrum, <i>plough.</i>	damnum, <i>loss.</i>	frēnum, <i>rein or bit.</i>
argentum, <i>silver.</i>	dōnum, <i>gift.</i>	impērium, <i>command.</i>
arvum, <i>corn-land.</i>	extitium, <i>destruction.</i>	iūgum, <i>yoke.</i>
astrum, <i>constellation.</i>	fātum, <i>fate.</i>	lignum, <i>log.</i>
bellum, <i>war.</i>	ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	lilium, <i>lily.</i>

<i>lucrum</i> , gain.	<i>praemium</i> , reward.	<i>tectum</i> , roof.
<i>mālum</i> , apple.	<i>pretium</i> , price.	<i>tēlum</i> , missile.
<i>membrum</i> , limb.	<i>proelium</i> , combat.	<i>templum</i> , temple.
<i>monstrum</i> , prodigy.	<i>prunum</i> , plum.	<i>tergum</i> , back.
<i>nēgōtium</i> , business.	<i>regnum</i> , kingdom.	<i>unguentum</i> , perfume.
<i>ōdium</i> , hatred.	<i>rostrum</i> , beak.	<i>venenum</i> , poison.
<i>officium</i> , duty.	<i>saxum</i> , stone.	<i>verbum</i> , word.
<i>oppidum</i> , town.	<i>sceptrum</i> , sceptre.	<i>vinculum</i> , chain.
<i>otium</i> , ease.	<i>scutum</i> , shield.	<i>vinum</i> , wine.
<i>ovum</i> , egg.	<i>sēpulcrum</i> , tomb.	<i>vitium</i> , fault.
<i>pōcūlum</i> , cup.	<i>somnium</i> , dream.	<i>vōtum</i> , vow.
<i>pōmum</i> , apple.		

In the Singular only we find, *aurum*, gold, *oleum*, oil, *solum*, soil.

In the Plural only, *arma*, arms, *exta*, entrails.

A few words in *-us* have their plurals in *a*; and a few in *-um* have plurals in *i*:—

<i>Iocus</i> , jest,	has in the Plural	<i>Ioci</i> or <i>ioca</i> .
<i>Locus</i> , place,	„	<i>Loci</i> or <i>loca</i> .
<i>Tartarus</i> , hell,	„	<i>Tartāra</i> .
<i>caelum</i> , heaven,	„	<i>Caeli</i> .
<i>frēnum</i> , rein,	„	<i>Freni</i> or <i>frena</i> .
<i>rastrum</i> , hoe,	„	<i>Rastri</i> or <i>rastra</i> .

The following have special meanings in the Plural:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>auxilium</i> , help.	<i>auxilia</i> , auxiliary troops.
<i>castrum</i> , a fort.	<i>castra</i> , a camp.
<i>impēdimentum</i> , a hindrance.	<i>impedimenta</i> , baggage.

## ON THE CASES AS PARTS of the SIMPLE SENTENCE.

### NOMINATIVE.

32. With a Verb and a Noun we can form a complete sentence—the noun standing as the Subject in the nominative case, and the verb agreeing with the subject in *Number and Person*.

The Latin equivalents of the nominative cases of the Personal Pronouns *I, thou, we, ye*, are *Ego, Tu, Nos, Vos*.

Thus the following are complete sentences :—

Ego doceo.	Aquila volat.	Portae patent.
Tu discis.	Ranae natant.	Arma sonant.
Nos stamus.	Magister docebit.	Puella canebat.
Vos sedetis.	Puer discet.	Pueri dormiebant.

NOTE.—The first and second persons of the tenses of many verbs standing by themselves form intelligible sentences, as *Doceo* and *Discis*, the pronouns being added only when emphasis is required.

### ACCUSATIVE.

33. Action implies (1.) an agent, (2.) a patient or effect.

The word expressing the patient or effect of an action is called the **Object** of the verb expressing the action. In Latin, the object of a verb of action is usually put in the accusative case.

Transitive verbs in Latin are those which are followed by an accusative of the object.

Agricola arat terram.	Magister docet puerum.
Nauta secat undas.	Cervus petit rivum.
Puella aperit portam.	Somnus lenit curas.

Next observe that the *order of the words* in each of the sentences just given may be changed without altering their meaning. This advantage we do not possess in English, because we have no termination for the Objective case of a noun by which we can distinguish it from the Nominative, and therefore we are generally bound to keep the order—*Subject, Verb, Object*.

In some Pronouns we have a distinct form for the Objective case; as *me, us, him, her*. Hence we can write, *Him God loved*, instead of *God loved him*, if we wish to give emphasis to the word *him*, by putting it in an unusual position.

The Latin equivalents of the Objective cases of our Pronouns *me, thee, us, you*, are *Me, Te, Nos, Vos*.

The order of words in a Latin sentence depends partly on emphasis, partly on sound; but in a simple sentence the natural order is *Subject, Object, Verb*. Thus we write—

Ego te amo; tu me amas.                      Magister puerum docet.  
Cervus rivum petit.

NOTE.—The Subject gains emphasis by being put at the end of the sentence, the Object by being put at the beginning.

### DATIVE.

34. The simplest use of the Dative is to denote *the person for whom* an action is performed. Thus we may have a sentence consisting of a verb and three nouns, which denote respectively

The subject performing the action—Nominative.

The object *on which* the action is performed—Accusative.

The person *for whom* the action is performed—Dative.

The Dative cases of the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons in Latin are—*Mihī, for me; Tibī, for thee; Nōbis, for us; Vōbis, for you.*

The usual position of the dative in a simple sentence is next to the subject, so as to bring into sharper contrast the person performing the action and the person affected by it. Thus we write—

Mihi puella coronam portat.                      Pueris magister praemia dabit.  
Servus\* domino poculum tradit.              Poeta vobis fabulam narrabit.

\* *N.B.*—The possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, etc.*, are not expressed in Latin when they are unemphatic.

### GENITIVE.

35. A Noun in the Genitive usually qualifies another Noun, the two together expressing a single notion.

This relation is in English generally expressed—

(1.) By the preposition *of*, as “The anger of the queen;”

(2.) By the possessive case, as “The queen’s anger.”

In Latin, *ira reginae* expresses the same notion.

The position of the genitive, before or after the noun on which it depends, seems to have been chiefly determined by sound, but the natural position is after the noun that it qualifies.

Servus iram domini timet.  
Belli pericula vitamus.

Umbræ silvarum puellas terrent.  
Curas animi lenit somnus.

### ABLATIVE.

36. The simplest use of the Ablative is to express the *instrument* with which an action is performed, or the *means* by which an effect is produced. In this usage it may be rendered in English by the prepositions *with* and *by*. Its position is usually in the middle of the sentence.

Regina gemmis comam decorat.  
Agricola campos aratro secat.

Antra musco virebant.  
Gallina pullos alis fovebit.

Pōpulus umbram foliis præbet.

### VOCATIVE.

37. The Vocative is used when a person or thing is spoken to by name. The form of the vocative is the same as that of the nominative in all Latin nouns, except in the singular of the *O* declension.

Te, regina, laudamus.  
Aura, veni.

Vos, ancillæ, domina vocat.  
Te, Bacche, canam.

### PREPOSITIONS.

38. The use of Prepositions is chiefly to indicate with accuracy *local* relations, such, for example, as those in which the speaker refers to motion *from*, *to*, *in*, or *about* a certain place.

In Latin, Prepositions are used with the Accusative and Ablative cases, and of those in common use we may here notice the following :—

#### WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

*Ad*, of motion *to*.  
*In*, of motion *into*.  
*Per*, of motion *through*.

#### WITH AN ABLATIVE.

*A* or *ab*, of motion *from*.  
*E* or *ex*, of motion *out of*.  
*In*, of rest or motion *in*.



Nuntios ad Pompeium mittemus.	Fumus ab aris surgit.
Via in Britanniam patet.	E silvis cervos agemus.
Per lucum rivus fluit.	In oppido manebo.
Regina in thalamo dormiebat.	Cenam in hortis servi parabant.

NOTE.—The Prepositions *a* and *e* are never used before vowels, but *ab* (or *abs*) and *ex* are frequently used before consonants.

39. In answer to the question Whither? names of towns and small islands are put in the accusative without a preposition.

Nuntios Romam mittam.

Legatos Sardiniam ad Pompeium mittemus.

### THE LOCATIVE CASE.

40. To express "at a place," the Latin writers use a form of the noun called the *locative case*, which in the *A* and *O* Declensions is the same as the Genitive for singular nouns, and as the Ablative for plural nouns, thus:

#### A DECLENSION.

Romæ = *at Rome*.

Athenis = *at Athens*.

#### O DECLENSION.

Corinthi = *at Corinth*.

Gabiis = *at Gabii*.

Thus we find—

Romæ manet Clodius.

Ludos Ephesi spectabam.

Pompeium Athenis videbo.

Similarly are used—

hūmi, *on the ground*,

dōmi, *at home*,

Cervus humi jacet,

Domi te manebo,

and, as contrasted with domi, the words militiae, *in the field*, and belli, *at war*.

### ADJECTIVES WITH STEMS IN A AND O.

41. Adjectives are words implying attributes. When joined to nouns they usually express some *quality* belonging to the persons, places, or things of which the nouns are the names, as, A *good* man, A *handsome* city, A *lofty* tree. Like nouns in Latin, they have inflexions to express differences of gender, number, and case.

42. Adjectives in which all three genders are distinguished are called adjectives of three terminations. In the most important class, of which *Dūrus*, *hard*, is a type,  
the masculine is declined like *Dominus*,  
the feminine is declined like *porta*,  
the neuter is declined like *signum*.

*Declension of the adjective DŪRUS, hard.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	dūrus	dūra	dūrum	<i>Nom.</i>	dūri	dūrae	dūra
<i>Gen.</i>	dūri	dūrae	dūri	<i>Gen.</i>	dūrorum	dūrarum	dūrorum
<i>Dat.</i>	dūro	dūrae	dūro	<i>Dat.</i>	dūris	dūris	dūris
<i>Acc.</i>	dūrum	dūram	dūrum	<i>Acc.</i>	dūros	dūras	dūra
<i>Voc.</i>	dūre	dūra	dūrum	<i>Voc.</i>	dūri	dūrae	dūra
<i>Abl.</i>	dūro	dūrā	dūro	<i>Abl.</i>	dūris	dūris	dūris

*Adjectives in common use declined like DŪRUS.*

albus, <i>white</i> .	fulvus, <i>tawny</i> .	pallidus, <i>pale</i> .
altus, <i>lofty</i> .	gelidus, <i>cool</i> .	parvus, <i>small</i> .
amicus, <i>friendly</i> .	lātus, <i>broad</i> .	pūrus, <i>clear</i> .
arduus, <i>steep</i> .	longus, <i>long</i> .	rāpidus, <i>swift</i> .
bōnus, <i>good</i> .	magnus, <i>great</i> .	rectus, <i>straight</i> .
castus, <i>chaste</i> .	mālus, <i>bad</i> .	rōtundus, <i>round</i> .
clārus, <i>bright</i> .	mēdius, <i>middle</i> .	siccus, <i>dry</i> .
curvus, <i>bent, winding</i> .	multus, <i>many</i> .	stultus, <i>foolish</i> .
densus, <i>thick</i> .	nōvus, <i>new</i> .	tācītus, <i>silent</i> .
flāvus, <i>yellow</i> .	nūdus, <i>naked</i> .	ūdus, <i>moist</i> .

*Declension of the adjective TĒNER, tender.*

43. The masculine is declined like *Puer*; the feminine like *porta*; the neuter like *signum*.

	SINGULAR.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	tēner	tenēra	tenērum
<i>Gen.</i>	teneri	tenerae	teneri
<i>Dat.</i>	tenero	tenerae	tenero
<i>Acc.</i>	tenerum	teneram	tenerum
<i>Voc.</i>	tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Abl.</i>	tenero	tenerā	tenero

	PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Gen.</i>	tenerorum	tenerarum	tenerorum
<i>Dat.</i>	teneris	teneris	teneris
<i>Acc.</i>	teneros	teneras	tenera
<i>Voc.</i>	teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Abl.</i>	teneris	teneris	teneris

Other adjectives of this class in common use are—

asper, <i>rough</i> ,	miser, <i>wretched</i> ,
lacer, <i>torn</i> ,	prosper, <i>lucky</i> ,
liber, <i>free</i> ,	

and some compounds from the verbs *fĕro*, *I bring*, and *gĕro*, *I bear*, as, *frūgifer*, *fruitful*, and *corniger*, *horned*.

*Sātur*, *satūra*, *satŭrum*, *full or gluttoned*, is similarly declined.

*Declension of the adjective ATER, black.*

44. The masculine is declined like *Magister*; the feminine like *porta*; the neuter like *signum*.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	āter	atra	atrum	<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	atri	atrae	atra
<i>Gen.</i>	atri	atrae	atri	<i>Gen.</i>	atrorum	atrarum	atrorum
<i>Dat.</i>	atro	atrae	atro	<i>Dat.</i>	atris	atris	atris
<i>Acc.</i>	atrum	atram	atrum	<i>Acc.</i>	atros	atras	atra
<i>Abl.</i>	atro	atrā	atro	<i>Abl.</i>	atris	atris	atris

Similarly are declined—

aeger, <i>sick</i> .	piger, <i>lazy</i> .
impiger, <i>active</i> .	pulcher, <i>handsome</i> .
intēger, <i>untouched</i> .	sinister, <i>on the left, unlucky</i> .
niger, <i>black</i> .	sacer, <i>consecrated</i> .
noster, <i>our</i> .	vester, <i>your</i> .

*Dexter*, *on the right, lucky*, is declined sometimes like *Tener* and sometimes like *Ater*.

### THE COPULA IN LATIN.

45. The forms of the Copula, *is, are, was, etc.*, are supplied in Latin by parts of the verb *Esse, to be*. The Imperfect tenses of the Indicative Mood are—

PRESENT.		PAST.	
SING.	1. <i>sum, I am.</i>	SING.	1. <i>eram, I was.</i>
	2. <i>es, thou art.</i>		2. <i>erās, thou wast.</i>
	3. <i>est, he (she, it) is.</i>		3. <i>erāt, he was.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>sūmūs, we are.</i>	PLUR.	1. <i>erāmūs, we were.</i>
	2. <i>estīs, ye are.</i>		2. <i>erātīs, ye were.</i>
	3. <i>sunt, they are.</i>		3. <i>erant, they were.</i>

#### FUTURE.

SING.	1. <i>erō, I shall be.</i>
	2. <i>erīs, thou wilt be.</i>
	3. <i>erit, he will be.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>erimūs, we shall be.</i>
	2. <i>eritīs, ye will be.</i>
	3. <i>erunt, they will be.</i>

### ON THE ADJECTIVE AS PART OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

46. The Adjective is used to express—

1st, a Predicate, as, *The town is ancient, Oppidum est antiquum.*

2d, an Attribute, as, *We see an ancient town, Oppidum antiquum videmus.*

In Latin the attributive adjective always, the predicative adjective generally, agrees with the noun to which it refers, in gender, number, and case.

*Via est ardua.*

*Alba lilia cadunt.*

*Vir bonus Deum timet.*

*Saxa sunt dura.*

*Pōpulus alta viret.*

*Deus virum bonum amat.*

The natural position of the attributive adjective is *after* the noun, but exceptions are frequent.

The distinctions of gender being marked by terminations, we often find in Latin adjectives used as nouns; thus—

*Amicus, a friend ; amici, friends.*

*Boni, good men ; bona, goods ; bonum, a blessing.*

*Multi, many men ; multa, many things.*

*Amicus amicum monet.*

*Boni bonos amant.*

*Multi divitias spernunt.*

*Pueri multa discunt.*

Hence it is that the predicative adjective sometimes differs in gender and number from the noun to which it refers, as—

*Liberi sunt bonum, children are a blessing.*

## SECOND CLASS OF NOUNS.

### DECLENSION OF I-NOUNS AND CONSONANT-NOUNS.

47. Nouns of this declension have various endings in the nominative; their genitive always ends in *-is*.

We may arrange them into two divisions—

A. Nouns which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative.

B. Nouns which have a syllable more in the genitive than in the nominative.

#### DIVISION A (CHIEFLY I-NOUNS).

48. Of nouns which do not increase in the genitive there are four varieties:—

1. Some of the nouns ending in *es* in the nominative, as *nubes, cloud*.

2. Most of the nouns ending in *is* in the nominative, as *classis, fleet*.

3. All neuter nouns ending in *e* in the nominative, as *mare, sea*.

4. A few of the nouns ending in *er* in the nominative, as *Pater, father*.

49.

1. *Nominative ending in es.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	nūbēs.	<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	nubēs.
<i>Gen.</i>	nubīs.	<i>Gen.</i>	nubiūm.
<i>Dat.</i>	nubī.	<i>Dat.</i>	nubībūs.
<i>Acc.</i>	nubem.	<i>Acc.</i>	nubēs.
<i>Abl.</i>	nubē.	<i>Abl.</i>	nubībūs.

Similarly are declined the following nouns, all feminine—

aedes, <i>temple.</i>	rūpes, <i>cliff.</i>
caedes, <i>slaughter.</i>	saepes, <i>hedge, orchard.</i>
clādes, <i>defeat, disaster.</i>	sēdes, <i>seat.</i>
fēles, <i>cat.</i>	strāges, <i>destruction.</i>
indōles, <i>disposition.</i>	subōles, <i>stock.</i>
mōles, <i>mass.</i>	valles, <i>vale.</i>
prōles, <i>offspring.</i>	vulpes, <i>fox.</i>

fāmes, *hunger*, makes famē in the ablative.

Vātes, *seer*, and Vepres, *bramble*, are of common gender; the former makes the genitive plural Vatum.

Verres, *boar-pig*, is masculine.

A large number of male names belong to this class, as Socrates, Demosthenes.

Senex, Sēnis, *old person*, is an irregular noun of this class, making the genitive plural Senum.

50.

2. *Nominative ending in is.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	classīs.	<i>N. &amp; V.</i>	classēs.
<i>Gen.</i>	classīs.	<i>Gen.</i>	classiūm.
<i>Dat.</i>	classī.	<i>Dat.</i>	classībūs.
<i>Acc.</i>	classem.	<i>Acc.</i>	classēs.
<i>Abl.</i>	classē.	<i>Abl.</i>	classībūs.

Nouns of this class are about equally divided in respect of gender; the following are Masculine—

Collis, <i>hill.</i>	Ensis, <i>sword.</i>
Crinis, <i>hair.</i>	Fascis, <i>bundle.</i>

Follis, *bellows*.  
 Fustis, *club*.  
 Ignis, *fire*.  
 Mensis, *month*.  
 Orbis, *circle*.  
 Pānis, *loaf*.

Postis, *door-post*.  
 Piscis, *fish*.  
 Sōdālis, *intimate friend*.  
 Unguis, *nail, claw*.  
 Vectis, *crow-bar*.  
 Vermis, *worm*.

The following are Feminine—

āpis, *bee*.  
 āvis, *bird*.  
 auris, *ear*.  
 clāvis, *key*.  
 cūtis, *skin*.  
 fēbris, *fever*.  
 fōris, *door*.  
 messis, *harvest*.  
 nāvis, *ship*.  
 ōvis, *sheep*.  
 pellis, *hide*.  
 pestis, *plague*.

puppis, *stern*.  
 rātis, *raft*.  
 restis, *rope*.  
 sitis, *thirst*.  
 sēcūris, *axe*.  
 trirēmis, *trireme*.  
 turris, *tower*.  
 vallis, *vale*.  
 vestis, *garment*.  
 vitis, *vine*.  
 vōlūcris, *bird*.

The following are Common—

Amnis, *river*.  
 Anguis, *snake*.  
 Cānis, *dog*.  
 Cīvis, *citizen*.  
 Fīnis, *end*.  
 Fūnis, *rope*.

Iūvēnis, *young person*.  
 Hostis, *enemy*.  
 Sentis, *thorn*.  
 Testis, *witness*.  
 Tīgris, *tiger*.  
 Torquis, *collar*.

Most of the nouns in these lists are declined like *classis*, but some have the accusative in *im* as well as *em* : such are *clavis*, *febris*, *messis*, *navis*, *restis*, *securis* ; *puppis* and *turris* have usually *im* ; *sitis*, *thirst*, has always *im*. Again, some have in the ablative *i* as well as *e* : such are *febris*, *navis*, *puppis*, *securis*, *turris*, *Amnis*, *Ignis* ; *sitis* has always *siti*.

The genitive plural ends as a rule in *ium* in nouns of this class : exceptions are *Canis*, *Iuvenis*, and *volucris*, which make *Canum*, *Iuvenum*, and *volucrum*. *Mensis* and *apis* have the gen. pl. in *ium* or *um*.

*N.B.*—The accusative plural of all *I-nouns* is frequently found in *is* instead of *es*, as *classis* for *classes*.

51. 3. Nominative ending in *e*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>măre.</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>marid.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>maris.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>marium.</i>
<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>mari.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>maribus.</i>

Similarly are declined—

<i>cubile</i> , bed.	<i>pēnētrāle</i> , inner-chamber.
<i>insigne</i> , ensign.	<i>praesēpe</i> , stall.
<i>monile</i> , necklace.	<i>rēte</i> , net.
<i>ovile</i> , sheep-fold.	<i>sedile</i> , seat.

The forms *marē* and *retē* are found in the ablative.

The following are found in the plural only :—*altāria*, altars ;  
*ilia*, flank ; *moenia*, city-walls.

52. 4. Nominative ending in *er*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>Pāter.</i>	<i>N. V.</i>	<i>Patres.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pātris.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Patrum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Patri.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Patribus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Patrem.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Patres.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Patre.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Patribus.</i>

Similarly are declined—

*Accipiter*, hawk ; *Frāter*, brother ; *māter*, mother ;  
*Imber*, shower ; *Lintor*, wherry ; *Venter*, belly ;

except that the three last have *ium* in the genitive plural :  
also, names of months in *er*, as September, which is really an  
adjective, with *Mensis* understood ; the ablative ends in *i*.

NOTE.—*Lintor* and *Accipiter* are sometimes feminine.

## 53. ADJECTIVES WITH I-STEMS.

Declension of the adjective *acer*, keen.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.				
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acre</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>acres</i>		<i>acria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>acris</i>		<i>Gen.</i>		<i>acrium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>acri</i>		<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>acribus</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrem</i>		<i>acre</i>				
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>acri</i>					



The following are declined in a similar way:—

ălăcer, <i>brisk.</i>	pădester, <i>on foot.</i>	silvester, <i>woody.</i>
campester, <i>of the plain.</i>	păluster, <i>marshy.</i>	terrester, <i>of earth.</i>
cělēber, <i>much frequented.</i>	püter, <i>rotten, loose.</i>	völticer, <i>winged.</i>
ēquester, <i>on horse.</i>	sălüber, <i>wholesome.</i>	

cēler, cělēris, cělērē, *swift*, only differs from the above in retaining *e* throughout its declension.

The accusative plural is found in *īs* more than *ēs* in these adjectives.

54. Adjectives ending in *is*, in which the Masculine and Feminine have the same endings, are declined like substantives of the *I* declension.

*Declension of the adjective TRISTIS, sad.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. V.	tristis	tristē	N. Ac. V.	tristes	tristia
Gen.	tristis		Gen.	tristium	
Dat.	tristi		Dat. Abl.	tristibus	
Acc.	tristem	tristē			
Abl.	tristi				

This is an important class, of which the following are examples:—

brēvis, <i>short.</i>	grācīlis, <i>slender.</i>	rūdis, <i>unpolished.</i>
cōmis, <i>courteous.</i>	grāvis, <i>heavy.</i>	sīmīlis, <i>like.</i>
commūnis, <i>common.</i>	hūmīlis, <i>lowly.</i>	stērīlis, <i>barren.</i>
crūdēlis, <i>cruel.</i>	lēvis, <i>smooth.</i>	tēnuis, <i>thin.</i>
dulcis, <i>sweet.</i>	lēvis, <i>light.</i>	ūtilis, <i>useful.</i>
fācīlis, <i>easy.</i>	nōbīlis, <i>noble.</i>	vīlis, <i>cheap.</i>
fortis, <i>brave.</i>	pīguis, <i>fat, rich.</i>	virīlis, <i>manly.</i>

The ablative ends usually in *i*. The genitive plural is regularly *ium*, but sometimes it is contracted into *um*.

The accusative plural is found in *īs* more frequently than *ēs*, and the nominative plural in *īs* is not uncommon.

## DIVISION B (CHIEFLY CONSONANT-STEMS).

55. Nouns which increase in the genitive may be treated under two heads.

1. Masculine and Feminine nouns, as *Lāpis*, *Lapīdis*, *stone*, and *sōrōr*, *sōrōris*, *sister*, which are declined thus :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Lāpis.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Lapīdēs.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Lapīdis.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Lapīdum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Lapīdi.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Lapīdibus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Lapīdem.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Lapīdes.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Lapis.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Lapīdes.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Lapīdē.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Lapīdibus.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sōrōr.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sōrōrēs.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sōrōris.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sōrōrum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sōrōri.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sōrōribus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sōrōrem.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sōrōres.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sōrōr.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sōrōres.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sōrōrē.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sōrōribus.</i>

With a few exceptions, to which (I) is attached in the following list, all nouns of this class that have a genitive plural have it in *um* and not *ium*. The manuscripts often give *is* instead of *ēs* for the termination of the accusative plural, though not so frequently as in the case of *I*-nouns.

56. The list of nouns which follows is arranged according to the terminations of the genitive singular: first, nouns whose genitive ends in *bis*; next, those whose genitive ends in *cis*, and so on; or, omitting the *I*-nouns, it may be regarded as a list of nouns of the third declension, masculine or feminine, whose stem ends in a consonant, *b*, *c*, *d*, and so on.

When the nominative is printed with a capital letter and the genitive with a small letter, as *Dux*, *ducis*, it signifies that the noun is generally masculine, but sometimes feminine; when the nominative has a small letter and the genitive a capital, it signifies that the noun is generally feminine, but sometimes masculine, as *calx*, *Calcis*.

**B stems.**

- (I) plebs, plēbia, *common people*.  
 (I) trabs, trābia, *beam*.  
 (I) urbs, urbis, *city*.

**C stems.**

- (I) arx, arcis, *citadel*.  
 calx, Calcis, *heel, lime, goal*.  
 crux, crūcis, *cross*.  
 Dux, dūcis, *leader*.  
 (I) falx, falcis, *sickle*.  
 fax, fācis, *torch*.  
 faex, faecis, *dregs*.  
 lanx, lancis, *dish*.  
 lux, lūcis, *light*.  
 lynx, lyncis, *lynx*.  
 (I) merx, mercis, *merchandise*.  
 nex, nēcis, *death*.  
 nux, nūcis, *nut*.  
 pax, pācis, *peace*.  
 vox, vōcis, *voice*.

fornax, fornācis, *furnace*.

Vervex, Vervēcis, *wether-sheep*.

Auspex, Auspīcis, *diviner*.

Āpex, Apīcis, *summit*.

Cālix, Calīcis, *cup*.

Cortex, cortīcis, *bark of tree*.

Fornix, Fornīcis, *arch*.

Ilex, ilīcis, *holm-oak*.

Iūdex, Iudīcis, *judge*.

Pollex, Pollicis, *thumb*.

sālix, salīcis, *willow*.

Silex, silīcis, *flint*.

Vindex, vindīcis, *avenger*.

cervix, cervīcis, *back of neck*.

cornix, cornīcis, *raven*.

nutrix, nutrīcis, *nurse*.

rādix, radīcis, *root*.

**D stems.**

- (I) fraus, fraudis, *deceit*.  
 (I) frons, frondis, *leaf*.  
 (I) glans, glandis, *acorn*.  
 laus, laudis, *praise*.  
 Pēs, Pēdis, *foot*.  
 Praes, Praedis, *surety*.  
 Vās, Vādis, *bail*.  
 cassis, cassīdis, *helmet*.  
 cuspis, cuspidis, *point of spear*.  
 Lāpis, Lapīdis, *stone*.  
 Obses, obsīdis, *hostage*.  
 pēcus, pecūdis, *sheep*.

Custōs, custōdis, *guardian*.

Hērēs, herēdis, *heir*.

incūs, incūdis, *anvil*.

mercēs, mercēdis, *reward*.

pālūs, palūdis, *marsh*.

**G stems.**

coniunx, Coniūgis, *spouse*.

Grex, Grēgis, *flock*.

lex, lēgis, *a law*.

Rex, Rēgis, *king*.

Rēmex, Remīgis, *rower*.

**L stems.**

Constil, Constīlis, *consul*.

Exstul, Exstūlis, *an exile*.

Sāl, Sālis, *salt*.

Sōl, Sōlis, *sun*.

**M stems.**

hiemps, hiēmis, *winter*.

**N stems.**

- (I) Rēn, Rēnis, *kidney*.

ārundo, arundīnis, *reed*.

cāligo, caligīnis, *darkness*.

Cardo, Cardīnis, *hinge*.  
 cūpīdo, Cupidīnis, *desire*.  
 dulcēdo, dulcedīnis, *sweetness*.  
 formīdo, formidīnis, *fear*.  
 grando, grandīnis, *hail*.  
 hīrūdo, hirudīnis, *leech*.  
 hīrundo, hirundīnis, *swallow*.  
 Hōmo, homīnis, *human being*.  
 imāgo, imaginīnis, *image*.  
 lūbīdo, lubidīnis, *longing*.  
 Margo, marginīnis, *border*.  
 Ordo, Ordīnis, *order*.  
 ōrīgo, originīnis, *source*.  
 testūdo, testudīnis, *tortoise*.  
 Turbo, Turbīnis, *whirlwind*.  
 virgo, virgīnis, *virgin*.

Cornīcēn, Cornicīnis, *horn-blower*.  
 Fidīcēn, Fidicīnis, *harper*.  
 Flāmēn, Flamīnis, *priest*.  
 Pectēn, Pectīnis, *comb*.  
 Tibīcēn, Tibicīnis, *flute-player*.  
 Tūbīcēn, Tubicīnis, *trumpeter*.

Sanguis, Sanguīnis, *blood*.  
 Āquīlo, Aquilōnis, *north-wind*.  
 Carbo, Carbōnis, *coal*.  
 Crabro, Crabrōnis, *hornet*.  
 Drāco, Dracōnis, *dragon*.  
 Leo, Leōnis, *lion*.  
 Līgo, Ligōnis, *hoe*.  
 Mucro, Mucrōnis, *edge of sword*.  
 Pāvō, Pavōnis, *peacock*.  
 Praeco, Praecōnis, *crier*.  
 Praedo, Praedōnis, *robber*.  
 Tīro, Tirōnis, *novice*.  
 Umbo, Umbōnis, *boss*.

actio, actiōnis, *action*.  
 condīcio, condiciōnis, *condition*.

dedītio, deditiōnis, *surrender*.  
 emptio, emptiōnis, *purchase*.  
 lēgio, legiōnis, *legion*.  
 nātio, natiōnis, *nation*.  
 ōrātio, oratiōnis, *speech*.  
 rēgio, regiōnis, *district*.  
 sēditio, seditiōnis, *insurrection*.

Pāpilio, Papiliōnis, *butterfly*.  
 Pūgio, Pugiōnis, *dagger*.  
 Septentrio, Septentriōnis, *the north*.

And some names of men, as  
 Curio, Pollio.

(I) caro, carnis, *flesh*.

#### P stems.

Ādeps, adīpis, *fat*.  
 Auceps, Aucūpis, *fowler*.  
 forceps, forcīpis, *tongs*.  
 Princeps, Princīpis, *chief*.  
 (I) Stirps, stirpis, *source, trunk*.

#### R stems.

Flōs, Flōris, *flower*.  
 Fūr, Fūris, *thief*.  
 (I) Glis, Gliris, *dormouse*.  
 Lār, Lāris, *house-god*.  
 (I) Mās, Māris, *male*.  
 Mōs, Mōris, *custom*.  
 Mūs, Mūris, *mouse*.  
 Rōs, Rōris, *deu*.

Aggēr, Aggēris, *mound*.  
 Carcer, Carcēris, *gaol, goal*.  
 Lāter, Lātēris, *brick*.  
 mūlier, mūliēris, *woman*.  
 Passer, Passēris, *sparrow*.  
 Vōmer, Vomēris, *ploughshare*.

Cīnis, cinēris, *ashes*.  
 Pulvis, pulvērī, *dust*.

arbör, arböris, *tree*.  
Lëpūs, Lëpöris, *hare*.

Ämör, Amöris, *love*.  
Ardor, Ardöris, *burning heat*.  
Auctor, auctöris, *author*.  
Cälör, Calöris, *warmth*.  
Censor, Censöris, *ensor*.  
Clämor, Clamöris, *shout*.  
Cölor, Colöris, *colour*.  
Dëcor, Decöris, *elegance*.  
Dölor, Dolöris, *grief*.  
Fautor, Fautöris, *partisan*.  
Fulgor, Fulgöris, *brightness*.  
Füror, Furöris, *madness*.  
Gënlitor, Genitöris, *father*.  
Hönor, Honöris, *honour*.  
Horror, Horröris, *shuddering*.  
Imperätor, Imperatöris, *commander*.  
Läbor, Laböris, *toil*.  
Lëpor, Lepöris, *wit*.  
Maeror, Maeröris, *mourning*.  
Ödor, Odöris, *smell*.  
Örator, Oratöris, *pleader*.  
Pallor, Pallöris, *pale*.  
Pastor, Pastöris, *shepherd*.  
Pävor, Pavöris, *fear*.  
Praetor, Praetöris, *praetor*.  
Püdor, Pudöris, *shame*.  
Quaestor, Quaestöris, *quaestor*.  
Rübor, Ruböris, *blush*.  
Rümor, Rumöris, *report*.  
söror, soröris, *sister*.  
Söpor, Sopöris, *sleep*.  
Splendor, Splendöris, *brilliance*.  
Südor, Sudöris, *sweat*.  
Terror, Terröris, *alarm*.  
Tïmor, Timöris, *fear*.  
Vigor, Vigöris, *vigour*.  
Ultor, Ultöris, *avenger*.  
uxor, uxöris, *wife*.

Ūmor, Umöris, *moisture*.

Angur, Augöris, *augur*.  
Furfur, Furföris, *bran*.  
Turtur, Turtöris, *turtle-dove*.  
Vultur, Vultöris, *vulture*.

tellūs, tellūris, *Earth*.

### S stems.

Ās, Assis, *a Roman weight*.

### T stems.

- (I) ars, artis, *art*.  
cōs, cōtis, *whetstone*.  
(I) dōs, dōtis, *dowry*.  
(I) Dens, Dentis, *tooth*.  
(I) Fons, Fontis, *fountain*.  
(I) frons, frontis, *forehead*.  
(I) gens, gentis, *race*.  
(I) lis, litis, *strife*.  
mens, mentis, *intellect*.  
(I) Mons, Montis, *mountain*.  
mors, mortis, *death*.  
(I) nox, noctis, *night*.  
(I) pars, partis, *part*.  
(I) Pons, Pontis, *bridge*.  
puls, pultis, *porridge*.  
sors, sortis, *lot*.  
(I) cōhors, cohortis, *cohort*.  
ānās, ānātis, *duck*.  
aestās, aestātis, *summer*.  
(I) aetas, aetātis, *age*.  
(I) civitās, civitātis, *state*.  
ēgestās, egestātis, *want*.  
fācultās, facultātis, *opportunity*.  
libertās, libertātis, *freedom*.  
mājestās, majestātis, *dignity*.  
paupertās, paupertātis, *poverty*.  
piētās, pietātis, *dutiful affection*.  
pōtestās, potestātis, *authority*.

sōcietās, societātis, <i>fellowship</i> .	Sūperstēs, superstitis, <i>survivor</i> .
tempestās, tempestātis, <i>weather, storm</i> .	Trāmēs, Tramītis, <i>path</i> .
vētustās, vetustātis, <i>antiquity</i> .	Ādāmās, Adamantis, <i>adamant</i> .
(I) vōluptās, voluptātis, <i>pleasure</i> .	Ēlēphās, Elephantis, <i>elephant</i> .
ābiēs, abiētis, <i>fir</i> .	Gīgās, Gigantis, <i>giant</i> .
Āriēs, Ariētis, <i>ram</i> .	(I) Infans, infantis, <i>infant</i> .
Pāriēs, Pariētis, <i>house-wall</i> .	(I) Adulescens, adulescentis, <i>young person</i> .
sēgēs, segētis, <i>crop</i> .	Bīdens, Bidentis, <i>hoe</i> .
tēgēs, tegētis, <i>mat</i> .	bidens, bidentis, <i>sheep</i> .
quies, quiētis, <i>rest</i> .	(I) Cliens, Clientis, <i>client</i> .
rēquies, requiētis, <i>repose</i> .	Occīdens, Occidentis, <i>west</i> .
Tāpes, Tapētis, <i>tapestry</i> .	Ōriens, Orientis, <i>east</i> .
Caespēs, Caespitis, <i>turf</i> .	(I) Pārens, parentis, <i>parent</i> .
Cōmēs, comītis, <i>companion</i> .	Serpens, serpentis, <i>serpent</i> .
Ēquēs, Equitis, <i>horseman</i> .	Nēpōs, Nepōtis, <i>grandson</i> .
Gurgēs, Gurgitis, <i>whirlpool</i> .	Sācerdōs, sacerdotis, <i>priest</i> .
Hospēs, hospitis, <i>stranger</i> .	iūventūs, iuventūtis, <i>youth</i> .
Līmēs, Limītis, <i>boundary</i> .	sālūs, salutis, <i>safety, health</i> .
Mīlēs, militis, <i>soldier</i> .	sēnectūs, senectūtis, <i>old age</i> .
Pēdēs, Pedītis, <i>foot-soldier</i> .	servītūs, servitūtis, <i>slavery</i> .
Poplēs, Poplītis, <i>back of knee</i> .	(I) virtūs, virtūtis, <i>virtue</i> .
Sātellēs, satellītis, <i>attendant</i> .	

In poetry we frequently find Infantum, and Parentum.

#### V stems.

Bos, bōvis, *ox or cow*, has boum in gen. pl., and bovis, bōbus, or būbus in dat. pl.

nix, nivis, *snow*.

Iuppiter, Iōvis, Iovi, Iovem, Iove, the name of the Chief of the Gods.

#### Names of other Heathen Deities.

Iūno, Iunōnis.	Āpollo, Apollīnis.
Vēnūs, Vēnēris,	Mars, Martis.
Cēres, Cērēris.	Plūto, Plutōnis.
Pallās, Pallādīs.	Hercūles, Herculis.

NOTE.—In the formation of the nominative from the noun-stem observe—

1. That it is chiefly formed by adding *s* to the stem, and that the final letter of the stem affects the formation ; thus—

Gutturals + *s* produce *x*; thus—

Duc + *s* gives Dux; leg + *s* gives lex.

Dentals + *s* produce loss of the dental—

Ped + *s* gives Pes; dot + *s* gives dos.

Labials + *s* keep both letters, with omission or change of the final vowel—

urb(i) + *s* gives urbs; Princip + *s* gives Princeps.

2. *N* + *s* rejects the *s*, except in Sanguis from Sanguin + *s*, and often rejects both *n* and *s*; thus from

stem Flamin- we have Flamen, and from

stem Leon- we have Leo.

3. *L* + *s* rejects the *s*, as Consul from stem Consul-.

4. *R* + *s* rejects the *s*, as Dolor from stem Dolor-, or changes *r* into *s*, as Flos from stem Flor-.

Hence we find the forms Honōs and arbōs sometimes instead of Honor and arbor.

57. Some words in the foregoing list only occur in the singular, as Sanguis, tellus; sūpellex, supellectilis, *household goods*, only occurs in the singular.

vis, *force*, is thus declined :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	vis.	Nom.	vires.
Gen.	vis.	Gen.	virium.
Dat.	vi.	Dat.	viribus.
Acc.	vim.	Acc.	vires.
Voc.	vis.	Voc.	vires.
Abl.	vi.	Abl.	viribus.

The genitive and dative singular are not used by Cicero.

Aethēr, Aethēris, *ether*, and Āēr, Aēris, *air*, are found only in the singular, and have the accusative forms Aethērā and Aērā.

Hērōs, Herōis, *hero*, has acc. sing. Herōā, and acc. pl. Herōās. lampās, lampādis, *torch*, has acc. sing. lampadā, and acc. pl. lampadās.

Of words used only in the plural we find in common use—

Maiores, *ancestors*.

Mānes, *departed spirits*.

Minores, *posterity*.

Pŕnātes, *household gods*.

fides, *stringed instrument*, is generally used in the plural, but the singular occurs.

Some nouns which are fully declined in the plural, are defective in some cases of the singular; such are—

ambāges, *circuits, evasions*.

frūges, *fruit*.

(I) compēdes, *fetters*.

ōpes, *resources*.

dāpes, *feast*.

prēces, *prayers*.

fauces, *throat*.

(I) sordes, *filth*.

## REMARKS ON THE GENDERS OF CONSONANT-NOUNS.

58. Observe that nouns with stem-endings *b*, *c*, *d*, are chiefly feminine, and that with respect to the endings *n*, *r*, *t*, which include five-sixths at least of the consonant-nouns in common use, we find—

1. Nouns in *o*, *-inis* are chiefly feminine, as *arundo*, *arundinis*.  
*o*, *-onis* are chiefly masculine, as *Aquilo*, *Aquilonis*.  
*io*, *-ionis* are chiefly feminine, as *actio*, *actionis*.
2. Nouns in *or*, *-oris* are chiefly masculine, as *Amor*, *Amoris*.
3. Nouns in *ās*, *-ātis*, all feminine, as *aestas*, *aestatis*.  
*ēs*, *-ētis*, chiefly masculine, as *Eques*, *Equitis*.  
*ūs*, *-ūtis*, all feminine, as *virtus*, *virtutis*.

### 2. Neuter Nouns.

59. The main body of nouns of this class consists of those neuter nouns whose stems end with the consonants *n* and *r*; most of them are declined like *nōmēn*, name, and *corpūs*, body; thus—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>nōmēn.</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>nomīnā.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nomīnis.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nomīNum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nomīni.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>nomīnībus.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nomīnē.</i>		



SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>corpus.</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>corporē.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>corpōris.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>corpōrum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>corpōri.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>corpōribus.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>corpōrē.</i>		

Similarly are declined—

<i>agmēn, agmīnis</i> , marching army.	<i>lūmēn, lumīnis</i> , light.
<i>carmēn, carmīnis</i> , song.	<i>nūmēn, numīnis</i> , divine influence.
<i>certāmen, certamīnis</i> , contest.	<i>ōmēn, omīnis</i> , omen.
<i>crīmēn, crimīnis</i> , charge.	<i>sēmēn, semīnis</i> , seed.
<i>culmēn, culmīnis</i> , top.	<i>stāmēn, stamīnis</i> , thread.
<i>flāmēn, flamīnis</i> , blast.	<i>tegmen, tegmīnis</i> , covering.
<i>flūmēn, flumīnis</i> , flood.	<i>tūtāmēn, tutamīnis</i> , defence.
<i>fulmēn, fulmīnis</i> , thunderbolt.	<i>vēlāmēn, velamīnis</i> , veil.
<i>grāmēn, gramīnis</i> , grass.	<i>vīmēn, vimīnis</i> , twig.
<i>līmēn, limīnis</i> , threshold.	
<i>dēcūs, decōris</i> , honour.	<i>foedūs, foedōris</i> , league.
<i>dēdēcūs, dedecōris</i> , disgrace.	<i>fūnus, funēris</i> , death.
<i>facīnus, facinōris</i> , action.	<i>gēnus, genēris</i> , race.
<i>fēnus, fēnōris</i> , interest.	<i>lātus, latēris</i> , side.
<i>frigus, frigōris</i> , cold.	<i>mūnus, munēris</i> , office.
<i>litus, litōris</i> , shore.	<i>olus, olēris</i> , garden-stuff.
<i>nēmus, nemōris</i> , grove.	<i>onus, onēris</i> , burden.
<i>pēcus, pecōris</i> , flock.	<i>opus, opēris</i> , work.
<i>pectus, pectōris</i> , breast.	<i>pondus, pondēris</i> , weight.
<i>pignus, pignōris</i> , pledge.	<i>scelus, scelēris</i> , crime.
<i>tempus, tempōris</i> , time.	<i>sidus, sidēris</i> , star.
<i>tergus, tergōris</i> , back.	<i>vellus, vellēris</i> , fleece.
	<i>vulnus, vulnēris</i> , wound.

The nouns which follow are declined like *corpus*, but many of them are defective in one or more cases of the plural.

<i>aequor, aequōris</i> , level surface, sea.	<i>murmur, murmuris</i> , murmur.
<i>marmor, marmōris</i> , marble, sea.	
<i>ēbur, ebōris</i> , ivory.	<i>ācēr, acēris</i> , maple.
<i>fēmur, femōris</i> , thigh.	<i>cādāver, cadavēris</i> , corpse.
<i>rōbur, robōris</i> , hard wood, strength.	<i>itēr, itinēris</i> , journey.
<i>fulgur, fulgūris</i> , lightning.	<i>pāpāver, papavēris</i> , poppy.
<i>guttur, guttūris</i> , throat.	<i>sūber, subēris</i> , cork-tree.
<i>īscur, iecōris,</i>	<i>tūber, tubēris</i> , tumour, truffle.
<i>īctnōris,</i>	<i>ūber, ubēris</i> , udder.
} liver.	

<i>aes, aeris</i> , bronze.	<i>fěl, fellis</i> , gall.
<i>făr, farris</i> , corn.	<i>měl, mellis</i> , honey.
<i>ős, őris</i> , countenance.	
<i>crūs, crūris</i> , leg.	<i>căpăt, capitis</i> , head.
<i>iūs, iūris</i> , right.	<i>iūbăr, iubāris</i> , beam of light.
<i>rūs, rūris</i> , country.	<i>neciār, nectāris</i> , nectar.
<i>tūs, tūris</i> , frankincense.	
<i>vēr, vēris</i> , spring-time—only in the singular.	
<i>lāc, lactis</i> , milk—only in the singular.	

The following make the nominative plural in *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium*.—

<i>ānīmāl, animālis</i> , living creature.	<i>lēcūnār, lacunāris</i> , ceiling.
<i>tōrāl, torālis</i> , coverlet.	<i>lāquedr, laquedris</i> , ceiling.
<i>calcār, calcāris</i> , spur.	<i>pulvīnār, pulvināris</i> , cushioned seat.

*ős, ossis*, bone, has in plural *ossa, ossium, ossibus*, etc.

A few Greek nouns in *ā* make the genitive plural in *um*: such as have a dative and ablative plural form them in *is* instead of *ibus*; such are

<i>diādēmā, diademātis</i> , crown.	<i>poēma, poemātis</i> , poem.
<i>ēpigramma, epigrammātis</i> , inscription, epigram.	<i>pēristrōma, peristromātis</i> , coverlet.

The nouns *nīhīl* or *nīl*, nothing; *ōpus*, need; *instār*, likeness, are only found in the nominative and accusative singular.

*verbēra, verberum*, stripes, has in the singular only the genitive and ablative.

*vās, vāsis*, vessel, has a plural of the second declension—*vāsa, vasorum, vasis*, etc.

## THE LOCATIVE OF THE CONSONANT-STEM DECLENSION.

60. The original ending of the Locative in this declension was *i*: thus, *Carthāgini, at Carthage*; *Neāpoli, at Naples*; *ruri, in the country*. But usually the ablative in *e* is found, as *Carthagine, rure*; and that in *ibus* for plural nouns, as *Gādibus, at Cadiz*.

### ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION IN THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.

61. Of the adjectives in which the nominative singular stands for all three genders, the most important class is that in which the nominative ends in *-ns*.

*Declension of the adjective RECENS, fresh.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS. FEM.	NEUT.		MAS. FEM.	NEUT.	
N. V.	recens		N. Ac. V.	recentes	recentia
Gen.	recentis		Gen.	recentium	
Dat.	recenti		Dat. Abl.	recentibus	
Acc.	recentem	recens			
Abl.	recenti (or e)				

Similarly are declined all adjectives in *-ens*, *-entis*, or *-ans*, *-antis*, or *-ons*, *-ontis*, as—

absens, <i>absent.</i>	neglġgens, <i>careless.</i>
constans, <i>firm.</i>	pātiens, <i>enduring.</i>
dġmens, <i>foolish.</i>	pōtens, <i>powerful.</i>
dilġgens, <i>careful.</i>	prūdens, <i>wary.</i>
insons, <i>guiltless.</i>	sāpiens, <i>wise.</i>

62. *Declension of FELIX, happy.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS. FEM.	NEUT.		MAS. FEM.	NEUT.	
N. V.	fġlix		N. Ac. V.	fġlices	fġlicia
Gen.	fġlicis		Gen.	fġlicium	
Dat.	fġlici		Dat. Abl.	fġlicibus	
Acc.	fġlicem	fġlix			
Abl.	fġlici (or e)				

Notice the following adjectives of one termination :—

anceps, <i>anġptis, doubtful.</i>	inops, <i>inōpis, helpless.</i>
audax, <i>audācis, bold.</i>	mġmor, <i>memōris, mindful.</i>
dġgġner, <i>degenġris, degenerate.</i>	pār, <i>pāris, equal.</i>
divġs, <i>divġtis, rich.</i>	pauper, <i>paupġris, poor.</i>
fallax, <i>fallācis, deceitful.</i>	praeceps, <i>praecipġtis, headlong.</i>
hġbġs, <i>hġbġtis, dull.</i>	rāpax, <i>rapācis, grasping.</i>
infġlix, <i>infġlicis, unhappy.</i>	sospġs, <i>sospġtis, safe.</i>

<i>superstēs, superstitis, surviving.</i>	<i>über, ubēris, fruitful.</i>
<i>supplex, supplicis, submissive.</i>	<i>vētūs, vetēris, old.</i>
<i>tērēs, tērētis, shapely.</i>	<i>victrix, victricis, victorious.</i>

The general rule of these declensions is that the ablative ends in *ē* or *ī*, but usually in *i*.

*Dives, pauper, sospes*, and *superstes* have it in *e* only.

The N. Ac. V. neut. pl. of *vetus* is *vetera*, and the gen. *veterum*.

The N. Ac. V. neut. pl. of *dives* is *ditia*, and the gen. *divitum*.

Many of the adjectives of one termination have no N. Ac. V. neuter plural; many make it in *-a* instead of *-ia*, and the genitive in *-um* instead of *-ium*.

63. The following may be studied with advantage, as being likely to fix the gender of certain nouns more firmly in the memory :—

<i>Calor nimius, excessive heat.</i>	<i>Iter longum, a long journey.</i>
<i>Cervix valida, a brawny neck.</i>	<i>Arbor frugifera, a fruitful tree.</i>
<i>Dux neglegens, a careless leader.</i>	<i>Aurea aetas, the golden age.</i>
<i>Custos diligens, a watchful guardian.</i>	<i>Mons altus, a lofty mountain.</i>
<i>Coniunx fidelis, a faithful spouse.</i>	<i>Grave onus, a heavy burden.</i>
<i>Mos antiquus, an ancient custom.</i>	<i>Dura ilex, the tough holm-oak.</i>
<i>Frons serena, a calm brow.</i>	<i>Grex vagus, a wandering flock.</i>
<i>Fons lucidus, a bright spring.</i>	<i>Lex antiqua, an ancient law.</i>
<i>Quies perpetua, uninterrupted repose.</i>	<i>Pes celer, a quick foot.</i>
<i>Palus uda, a wet swamp.</i>	<i>Laus magna, great praise.</i>
<i>Annis rapidus, a swift river.</i>	<i>Ignis fervidus, a glowing fire.</i>
<i>Avis garrula, a chattering bird.</i>	<i>Nāvis ampla, a spacious ship.</i>
<i>Turris excelsa, a lofty tower.</i>	<i>Hostis ferus, a savage enemy.</i>
<i>Testis vivus, a living witness.</i>	<i>Urbs pulchra, a fair city.</i>
<i>Iudex aequus, an impartial judge.</i>	<i>Lux clara, bright light.</i>
<i>Vox acuta, a shrill voice.</i>	<i>Lapis asper, a rugged stone.</i>
<i>Imago vivida, a life-like portrait.</i>	<i>Ordo lucidus, a clear arrangement.</i>
<i>Mus exiguus, a tiny mouse.</i>	<i>Regio finitima, a neighbouring district.</i>
<i>Lepus timidus, a timorous hare.</i>	<i>Ros gelidus, cool dew.</i>
<i>Seges matura, a ripe crop.</i>	<i>Abies ardua, a towering fir.</i>
<i>Sors incerta, a dubious chance.</i>	<i>Bos piger, a lazy ox.</i>
<i>Nemus opacum, a shady grove.</i>	<i>Nomen splendidum, a glorious name.</i>
	<i>Rus amœnum, the charming country.</i>

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH U-STEMS.

64. Nouns of this division have the ending *us* in the nominative singular when they are Masculine or Feminine, and *u* when they are Neuter.

1. *Nominative in us.*

There are two nouns—*Sūs*, *suis*, *swine*, and *Grūs*, *gruis*, *crane*, of common gender, which are declined with uncontracted forms; thus—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom. Voc.</i>	<i>grus</i>	<i>grues.</i>	<i>Nom. Voc.</i>	<i>sus</i>	<i>sues.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>gruis</i>	<i>grUum.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>suis</i>	<i>sUum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>grui</i>	<i>gruibus.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>suibus (or sūbus).</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>gruem</i>	<i>grues.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>suem</i>	<i>sues.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>gruē</i>	<i>gruibus.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>suē</i>	<i>suibus (or subus).</i>

The other nouns of this division are declined like *Fructūs*, *fruit*—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom. Voc.</i>	<i>Fructūs.</i>	<i>Nom. Ac. Voc.</i>	<i>Fructūs.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Fructūs.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>FructUum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Fructui.</i>	<i>Dat. Ab.</i>	<i>Fructūbus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Fructum.</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Fructū.</i>		

NOTE.—The genitive *Fructūs* is a contraction of *Fructuis*; *Fructu* is a contraction of *Fructue*, and the full forms *Fructui* and *Fructuum* are often contracted into *Fructu* and *Fructum*.

Like *Fructus* are declined the following Masculine nouns, chiefly in *sus* and *tus*, which endings are comparatively rare in the O declension :—

<i>Aestus</i> , <i>tide.</i>	<i>Coetus</i> , <i>meeting.</i>	<i>Flētus</i> , <i>weeping.</i>
<i>Arcus</i> , <i>bow.</i>	<i>Currus</i> , <i>chariot.</i>	<i>Flexus</i> , <i>winding.</i>
<i>Cāsus</i> , <i>accident.</i>	<i>Cursus</i> , <i>course.</i>	<i>Fluctus</i> , <i>wave.</i>
<i>Cantus</i> , <i>singing.</i>	<i>Exercitus</i> , <i>army.</i>	<i>Frēmītus</i> , <i>groan.</i>
<i>Census</i> , <i>assessment.</i>	<i>Flātus</i> , <i>blast.</i>	<i>Gēmītus</i> , <i>sigh.</i>

Grādus, <i>step.</i>	Nisus, <i>effort.</i>	Sinus, <i>lap, bay.</i>
Gressus, <i>step.</i>	Ortus, <i>rising.</i>	Situs, <i>position, rust.</i>
Hālitus, <i>breath.</i>	Partus, <i>childbirth.</i>	Sōnitus, <i>sound.</i>
Haustus, <i>draught.</i>	Passus, <i>step.</i>	Spiritus, <i>breath.</i>
Ictus, <i>blow.</i>	Pēnus, <i>victuals.</i>	Tactus, <i>touch.</i>
Impētus, <i>onset.</i>	Plausus, <i>applause.</i>	Tōnitrus, <i>thunder.</i>
Lācus, <i>lake.</i>	Portus, <i>harbour.</i>	Tractus, <i>extent.</i>
Lapsus, <i>gliding.</i>	Quaestus, <i>gain.</i>	Tumultus, <i>uproar.</i>
Lūsus, <i>sport.</i>	Risus, <i>laughter.</i>	Ūsus, <i>use.</i>
Luxus, <i>extravagance.</i>	Ritus, <i>custom.</i>	Vestitus, <i>clothing.</i>
Mētus, <i>fear.</i>	Saltus, <i>lawn or leaping.</i>	Victus, <i>sustenance.</i>
Morsus, <i>bite.</i>	Sensus, <i>feeling.</i>	Visus, <i>vision.</i>
Mōtus, <i>movement.</i>	Singultus, <i>sob.</i>	Vultus, <i>countenance.</i>

And the following Feminine nouns—

ācus, <i>needle.</i>	nūrus, <i>daughter-in-law.</i>	sōcrus, <i>mother-in-law.</i>
ānus, <i>old woman.</i>	porticus, <i>colonnade.</i>	tribus, <i>tribe.</i>
mānus, <i>hand.</i>	quercus, <i>oak.</i>	

The following have *ūbus* for *ibus* in the dative and ablative plurals, some dissyllable in *-cus*, as Arcus, acus, Lacus; also Partus, Portus, and tribus.

Artūs, *joints*, is rarely found in the singular, and has Artūbus in dative and ablative.

The declension of domus, *house*, a Feminine noun, is—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. dōmus.	Nom. domūs.
Gen. domūs.	Gen. domorum (or domuum).
Dat. domui (or domo).	Dat. domībus.
Acc. domum.	Acc. domus (or domos).
Voc. domus.	Voc. domus.
Abl. domo (or domu).	Abl. domibus.

The forms in the brackets are rare, but used by classical writers.

Some Feminine words have forms of the U as well as the O declension; such are, cōlus, *distaff*, laurus, *bay-tree*, pīnus, *pine*, myrtus, *myrtle*, ficus, *fig*.

Spēcus, *cave*, is used by Virgil as a Neuter noun, of which specūbus is the ablative plural.

## 2. Nominative in u.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>cornū.</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i> <i>cornua.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cornūa.</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>cornūum.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>cornū.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i> <i>cornibus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>cornu.</i>	
<i>Voc.</i> <i>cornu.</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> <i>cornū.</i>	

This and *gēnū*, knee, are the only words to which anything like a complete declension of this form can be assigned.

There is an ablative form, *gēlū*, frost, but the genitive *gēli* and the accusative *gēlum* occur.

There is *pecua* and dative and ablative *pecūbus*, cattle, as if from a nominative *pēcu*.

And there is *vērūbus*, a dative and ablative, from *verū*, spit.

## DECLENSION OF E-NOUNS.

66. This declension includes a few nouns ending in *ēs*, of which two only are declined fully, *res*, *thing*, and *dies*, *day*. *Res* and all other nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, which is of common gender in the singular, and masculine in the plural, and *mēridies*, *noon*, which is masculine.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>N. V.</i> <i>res.</i>	<i>Dies.</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i> <i>res.</i>	<i>Dies.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>rei.</i>	<i>diēi.</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>rērūm.</i>	<i>Diērūm.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>rei.</i>	<i>diēi.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i> <i>rēbus.</i>	<i>Diēbus.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>rem.</i>	<i>diem.</i>		
<i>Abl.</i> <i>rē.</i>	<i>diē.</i>		

NOTE.—The form of the genitive plural leads some grammarians to put these nouns with the A and O stems.

Most of the other nouns in this declension have only the nom. acc. and voc. plural, and some have no cases of the plural at all.

acies, *edge, battle array.*

caesaries, *long hair.*

effigies, *likeness.*

facies, *face.*

fides, *faith.*

glacies, *ice.*

Méridies, *noon.*

paupéries, *poverty.*

prögenies, *offspring.*

rabies, *madness.*

scabies, *roughness.*

spécies, *appearance.*

spes, *hope.*

The *e* of the genitive is long after a vowel, as *faciëi*, and common after a consonant, as *fidëi* or *fidëi*.

The genitive is sometimes contracted, as *fidë*.

## ON THE PERFECT TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

**67. The Perfect-Present** represents an action as completed at the *present* time. Thus the Perfect-Present of *Video*, *I see*, which is *Vidi*, means *I saw*, or *I have seen*; and the words *Romam vidi*, may mean *I saw Rome*, on some occasion in time *past*, or *I have seen Rome*, which may mean, “at the time of speaking I have seen and still see Rome.”

Here observe one of the defects of Latin, that it has but one tense to express the simple momentary act in time past—*I came*, and the completed act, of which the effects continue to the present time, *I have come*, both of which are expressed by *Vëni*.

**68. The Perfect-Present of Active Verbs** is formed in various ways, but always ends in *i*.—

1. By adding the syllable *vi* to the stem of the verb; which may be regarded as the regular formation in the First and Fourth Conjugations, as *Amävi*, *Audivi*.
2. By adding *ui* to the stem, as *Colui*, from *Cölo*, *I till*; or to the stem after the removal of a final vowel, as *Secui*, from *Sëco*, *I cut*; *Monui*, from *Moneo*, *I advise*.
3. By adding *si* to the stem, as *Carpsi*, from *Carpo*, *I pluck*.
4. By reduplication, that is, prefixing a syllable like that of the first syllable of the stem, as *Cucurri*, from *Curro*, *I run*—the first vowel being often changed to *e*, as *Fefelli*, from *Fallo*, *I deceive*.



5. By modifying the stem without adding a syllable, as  
Egi, from *Āgo*, *I drive*; Volvi, from *Volvo*, *I roll*.

NOTE.—When, by the addition of *si* to the verb-stem, *s* is brought into contact with a consonant, changes are made of which the following are examples :—

*scribo* has for its Perfect-Present *scripsi*.

*duco* ..... *duxi*.

*rideo* ..... *risi*.

*mitto* ..... *misi*.

*sumo* ..... *sumpsi*.

69. The following is a list of some verbs in common use, to illustrate the various formations of the Perfect-Present.

The verbs to which *D* is prefixed take a dative to express the object favoured, hurt, etc.; thus, *Faveo tibi*, *Noceo tibi*.

#### First Conjugation.

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.	PERFECT-PRESENT.	IMPERFECT-PRESENT.	PERFECT-PRESENT.
<i>āmo</i> , love.	<i>āmāvi</i> .	<i>libēro</i> , set free.	<i>libēravi</i> .
<i>cūbo</i> , lie down.	<i>cūbui</i> .	<i>sto</i> , stand.	<i>stēti</i> .
<i>do</i> , give.	<i>dēdi</i> .	<i>vōco</i> , call.	<i>vōcavi</i> .

#### Second Conjugation.

<i>dōceo</i> , teach.	<i>dōcui</i> .	<i>D nōceo</i> , hurt.	<i>nōcui</i> .
<i>D fāveo</i> , favour.	<i>fāvi</i> .	<i>D pāreo</i> , obey.	<i>pāruī</i> .
<i>fleo</i> , weep.	<i>flēvi</i> .	<i>D plāceo</i> , please.	<i>plācui</i> .
<i>hābeo</i> , have, hold.	<i>hābui</i> .	<i>rideo</i> , smile.	<i>risi</i> .
<i>D indulgeo</i> , yield.	<i>indulsi</i> .	<i>sēdeo</i> , sit.	<i>sēdi</i> .
<i>D invideo</i> , envy.	<i>invīdi</i> .	<i>tāceo</i> , be silent.	<i>tācui</i> .
<i>iūbeo</i> , order.	<i>iussi</i> .	<i>tēneo</i> , hold.	<i>tēnuī</i> .
<i>lāteo</i> , lie hid.	<i>lātui</i> .	<i>terreo</i> , frighten.	<i>terrui</i> .
<i>māneo</i> , remain.	<i>mansī</i> .	<i>tīmeo</i> , fear.	<i>tīmui</i> .
<i>mōneo</i> , advise.	<i>mōnuī</i> .	<i>video</i> , see.	<i>vīdi</i> .

#### Third Conjugation.

<i>āgo</i> , drive.	<i>ēgi</i> .	<i>constūlo</i> , consult.	<i>constūlui</i> .
<i>cādo</i> , fall.	<i>cēcīdi</i> .	<i>D crēdo</i> , trust.	<i>crēdīdi</i> .
<i>cāpio</i> , take.	<i>cēpi</i> .	<i>curro</i> , run.	<i>cūcurri</i> .
<i>D cēdo</i> , yield to.	<i>cessi</i> .	<i>disco</i> , learn.	<i>dīdici</i> .
<i>cognosco</i> , recognise.	<i>cognōvi</i> .	<i>divīdo</i> , separate.	<i>divīsi</i> .
<i>condo</i> , build.	<i>condīdi</i> .	<i>dūco</i> , lead.	<i>duxi</i> .

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.	PERFECT-PRESENT.	IMPERFECT-PRESENT.	PERFECT-PRESENT.
fācio, <i>make.</i>	fēci.	D parco, <i>spare.</i>	pēperci.
fallo, <i>deceive.</i>	fēfelli.	pōto, <i>seek.</i>	pētivi.
finġo, <i>invent.</i>	finxi.	pōno, <i>place.</i>	pōsui.
fundo, <i>pour.</i>	fūdi.	rēlinquo, <i>leave.</i>	rēliqui.
gēro, <i>carry on.</i>	gessi.	scribo, <i>write.</i>	scripsi.
incēpio, <i>begin.</i>	incēpi.	sīno, <i>allow.</i>	sīvi.
instruo, <i>draw up.</i>	instruxi.	vēho, <i>carry.</i>	vexi.
lēgo, <i>read.</i>	lēgi.	vivo, <i>live.</i>	vixi.
mitto, <i>send.</i>	misi.	vinco, <i>conquer.</i>	vici.

## Fourth Conjugation.

haurio, <i>draw.</i>	hausi.	sentio, <i>feel.</i>	sensi.
D oboedio, <i>obey.</i>	oboedivi.	vēnio, <i>come.</i>	vēni.
D servio, <i>serve.</i>	servivi.	vincio, <i>bind.</i>	vinxi.

70. Removing the suffix *i* we get the **Perfect Stem**, as *amav-*, *monu-*, *scrips-*, *vid-*.

By adding to this stem the suffixes *-eram*, and *-ero*, we form the **Perfect-Past** and **Perfect-Future**; thus—

*amaveram*, *I had loved* (at some specified *past* time);

*amavero*, *I shall have loved* (at some specified *future* time).

71. These three Perfect Tenses are conjugated in the same way in all the conjugations; thus—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PERFECT TENSES.

## Conjugation 1.

## PRESENT.

SING.	1. āmāvī, <i>I loved</i> , or <i>I have</i>
	2. āmāvistī. [ <i>loved.</i> ]
	3. āmāvīt.
PLUR.	1. āmāvīmūs.
	2. āmāvistīs.
	3. āmāvērunt ( <i>or</i> āmāvērē).

## PAST.

SING.	1. āmāvēram, <i>I had loved.</i>
	2. āmāvērās.
	3. āmāvērāt.
PLUR.	1. āmāvērāmūs.
	2. āmāvērātīs.
	3. āmāvērānt.

## Conjugation 2.

## PRESENT.

mōnuī, <i>I advised</i> , or <i>I have advised.</i>
mōnuistī.
mōnuīt.
mōnuīmūs.
mōnuistīs.
mōnuērunt ( <i>or</i> monuēre).

## PAST.

mōnuēram, <i>I had advised.</i>
mōnuērās.
mōnuērāt.
mōnuērāmūs.
mōnuērātīs.
mōnuērānt.

Conjugation 1.—*continued.*

## FUTURE.

- SING. 1. *āmāvērō, I shall have loved.*  
 2. *āmāvērīs.*  
 3. *āmāvērīt.*
- PLUR. 1. *āmāvērīmūs.*  
 2. *āmāvērītīs.*  
 3. *āmāvērint.*

## Conjugation 3.

## PRESENT.

- SING. 1. *rexī, I ruled, or I have ruled.*  
 2. *rexistī.*  
 3. *rexīt.*
- PLUR. 1. *reximūs.*  
 2. *rexistīs.*  
 3. *rexerunt (or rexere).*

## PAST.

- SING. 1. *rexeram, I had ruled.*  
 2. *rexerās.*  
 3. *rexerāt.*
- PLUR. 1. *rexerāmūs.*  
 2. *rexerātīs.*  
 3. *rexerant.*

## FUTURE.

- SING. 1. *rexerō, I shall have ruled.*  
 2. *rexerīs.*  
 3. *rexerīt.*
- PLUR. 1. *rexerīmūs.*  
 2. *rexerītīs.*  
 3. *rexerint.*

Conjugation 2.—*continued.*

## FUTURE.

- mōnuērō, I shall have advised.*  
*mōnuērīs.*  
*mōnuērīt.*  
*mōnuērīmūs.*  
*mōnuērītīs.*  
*mōnuērint.*

## Conjugation 4.

## PRESENT.

- audīvī, I heard, or I have heard.*  
*audīvistī.*  
*audīvīt.*  
*audīvīmūs.*  
*audīvistīs.*  
*audīverunt (or audiverē).*

## PAST.

- audīveram, I had heard.*  
*audīverās.*  
*audīverāt.*  
*audīverāmūs.*  
*audīverātīs.*  
*audīverant.*

## FUTURE.

- audīverō, I shall have heard.*  
*audīverīs.*  
*audīverīt.*  
*audīverīmūs.*  
*audīverītīs.*  
*audīverint.*

## Perfect Tenses of SUM.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

## FUTURE.

- |                                  |                            |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| SING. 1. <i>fui, I was, or I</i> | <i>fueram, I had been.</i> | <i>fuerō, I shall have</i> |
| 2. <i>fuiſtī. [have been.</i>    | <i>fuerās.</i>             | <i>fuerīs. [been.</i>      |
| 3. <i>fuit.</i>                  | <i>fuerāt.</i>             | <i>fuerīt.</i>             |
| PLUR. 1. <i>fuiſmūs.</i>         | <i>fuerāmūs.</i>           | <i>fuerīmūs.</i>           |
| 2. <i>fuiſtīs.</i>               | <i>fuerātīs.</i>           | <i>fuerītīs.</i>           |
| 3. <i>fuerunt.</i>               | <i>fuerant.</i>            | <i>fuerint.</i>            |

## 72. EXTENDED List of PREPOSITIONS in COMMON USE.

### WITH ACCUSATIVE.

Ad, *to*.  
 Apud, *near*.  
 Ante, *before*.  
 Circum, *around*.  
 Contra, *against*.  
 Extra, *outside*.  
 Inter, *among*.  
 Intra, *within*.  
 Ob, *on account of*.  
 Per, *through*.  
 Post, *after, behind*.  
 Praeter, *except*.  
 Propter, *on account of, near*.  
 Trans, *across*.

### WITH ABLATIVE.

A, ab, *from, by*.  
 Cum, *with*.  
 De, *concerning, down from*.  
 E, ex, *out of*.  
 Pro, *for, in behalf of, in front of*.  
 Sine, *without*.

### WITH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

In, *into, in*.  
 Sub, *under*.  
 Super, *over, upon*.  
 Subter, *under*.

NOTE 1.—*In* and *Sub* with the Accusative are much used with verbs of *motion*.

*In* and *Sub* with the Ablative are much used with verbs of *rest*.

NOTE 2.—The Preposition is often inserted between the noun and the adjective—

Magno cum periculo, *at great risk*.  
 Multis de causis, *for many reasons*.

NOTE 3.—A genitive depending on a noun is often placed between the noun and the preposition that governs it; thus—

Pompeium in amicorum numero habeo, *I regard Pompeius as a friend*.

73. The following are examples of the use of the Perfect in simple sentences:—

Hostium clamor milites terruit.  
 Caesar in Gallia bellum gessit.  
 Librum de Amicitia scripsit Cicero.

Pastores ad fluvium pecora egerunt.  
 Oculos natura nobis dedit.  
 Caesar in oppidum milites duxit.  
 Pompeius Sardiniam cum classe venit.  
 Pompeius in Macedoniam cum exercitu venit.  
 Servo libertatem dominus dedit.  
 Pater de filii morte flevit.  
 Romulus in Capitolio templum Iovis condidit.  
 Caesar Helvetios in hostium numero habuit.  
 Ad cenam Varius me vocavit.  
 Sub nomine pacis bellum latuit.  
 Romulum lupa nutrit.  
 Arcem urbis ab incendio liberavi.

### ADVERBS.

74. An Adverb is a word used to qualify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. It has no inflexions.

The following adverbs are of common use in the simple sentence—

- (1.) Adverbs of Place, answering the question *Where?*—

Hic, *here.* Ibī, *there.* Indē, *thence.* Prēcūl, *far away.*

- (2.) Adverbs of Manner, answering the question *How?*—

Sic, *so.* Itā, *thus.*

- (3.) Adverbs of Time, answering the question *When?*—

Nunc, *now.* Mox, *presently.* Sempēr, *always.* Rārō, *seldom.*  
 Tum, *then.* Nūpēr, *lately.* Nunquam, *never.* Saepē, *often.*

- (4.) Adverbs of Negation—

Nōn, *not.* Haud, *by no means.*

Haud is not used with verbs in Latin prose, except scio,  
*I know,* and dubito, *I doubt.*

- (5.) Adverbs of Interrogation—

Ōūr, *why?* Ūbī, *where?* Undē, *whence?* Quandō, *when?*

(6.) Adverbs of Degree, answering the question *To what extent?*

Vix, *scarcely*. Pröpsě, *almost*. Valdě, *exceedingly*.  
Sătis, *sufficiently*. Nimium, *too much*. Părum, *but little*.

75. Almost every adjective in common use has an adverb formed from it.

Adverbs formed from adjectives of the O and A declension usually end in *ě*, as rectě, *rightly*; misěřě, *wretchedly*; aegrě, *hardly*. But běně, *well*, and mălě, *badly*, have the *e* short.

Some of these adverbs end in *ō*, as tutō, *safely*, falsō, *falsely*.

Adverbs formed from adjectives of the I declension usually end in *ter*, as feliciter, *happily*, audacter, *boldly*, fortiter, *bravely*, constanter, *firmly*.

### ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

76. A word or phrase in a sentence defining the *place, time, manner, cause, or purpose* of an action is called an Adverbial Expression.

Examples of such words and phrases are—

- (1.) The ablatives of some nouns, as—ordine, *in orderly fashion*; jure, *legally, rightly*; more, *according to custom*; vi, *forcibly*; nocte, *by night*; aestate, *in the summer*; hieme, *in the winter*.
- (2.) A noun and the preposition with which it is connected, as—ex natura, *naturally, in accordance with nature*; cum consilio, *deliberately*; ex animo, *heartily*; sine dubio, *unquestionably*.
- (3.) A noun in the ablative qualified by an adjective, as—aequo animo, *calmly*; magno opere, *vigorously*.
- (4.) A noun in the ablative qualified by an adjective and governed by a preposition, as—magna ex parte, *to a great extent, chiefly*; multis de causis, *for many reasons*; magno cum periculo, *at great risk*.

## ATTRIBUTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

77. By an Attributive Expression we mean any word or words, other than the simple adjective, added to the subject or object to define or limit its meaning. Examples of such expressions are—

- (1.) Another noun standing in the same case as the subject or object. This is called *Apposition*.

*Cicero consul in aedem Concordiae senatum convocavit,*  
*Cicero, as Consul, summoned the senate to the temple*  
*of Concord.*

- (2.) A genitive qualifying the subject or object :—

*Hostium legati ad castra Caesaris venerunt.*  
*Mons Iura fines Seguanorum ab Helvetiis dividit.*

- (3.) A prepositional phrase qualifying the subject or object :—

*Pauci de nostris ceciderunt, A few of our men fell.*  
*Librum de Amicitia scripsit Cicero, Cicero wrote a*  
*treatise on Friendship.*

NOTE 1.—A noun in apposition is often qualified by an attribute or attributive expression :—

*Mausölus, rex Cariae, Artemisiam habuit coniugem,*  
*Mausolus, king of Caria, had a wife named Artemisia.*

*Plato Speusippum, sororis filium, philosophiae heredem*  
*reliquit, Plato left Speusippus, his sister's son, heir of his*  
*philosophy.*

NOTE 2.—Such a phrase as *Canum amor in dominos*, *the affection of dogs for their masters*, when expressed in the form of a simple sentence, becomes *Canes amant dominos*, and hence *Canum* is called a *subjective genitive*, because the word corresponding to it is the *subject* of the corresponding sentence.

But such a phrase as *Amor patriae*, *patriotism*, when expressed as a simple sentence, becomes *Homines amant patriam*, and hence *patriae* is called an *objective genitive*, because the word corresponding to it is the *object* of the corresponding sentence.

NOTE 3.—The Objective Genitive in Latin, denoting the object of an action implied in the noun that it qualifies, is often used in phrases where in English we use the Prepositions *for*, *about*, *from*.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
Resentment <i>for</i> a wrong.	Dolor injuriæ.
Escape <i>from</i> danger.	Fuga periculi.
A craving <i>for</i> gain.	Fames lucri.
Sleep is a refuge <i>from</i> all toils.	Somnus est perfrugium omnium laborum.
Anxiety <i>about</i> the body.	Cura corporis.

NOTE 4.—The Attributive Adjective is used in Latin in many cases where we use Prepositions, such as *of*, *in*, *against*; thus—

Mons summus, <i>the top of the mountain.</i>
Sullanus exercitus, <i>the army of Sulla.</i>
Media aestas, <i>the middle of the summer.</i>
Bellum Africanum, <i>the war in Africa.</i>
Bellum Mithridaticum, <i>the war against Mithridates.</i>
Reliqua Graecia, <i>the rest of Greece.</i>
Italia tota, <i>the whole of Italy.</i>

NOTE 5.—Observe carefully the following distinctions :—

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
Urbs Roma.	The city <i>of</i> Rome.
Sardinia insula.	The island <i>of</i> Sardinia.
Civis Romanus.	A citizen <i>of</i> Rome.
Civis Atheniensis.	A citizen <i>of</i> Athens.
Graecus homo.	A Greek.
Homo Romanus.	A Roman.
Vir patricius.	A patrician.

NOTE 6.—The Objective Genitive follows many adjectives in Latin to express the object of *desire*, *knowledge*, etc., implied in the adjective; thus—

cupidus belli, <i>eager for war.</i>
avidus laudis, <i>craving for praise.</i>



## EXPANSION OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

78. Taking the chief type-form of the simple sentence (§ 14), *Subject, Verb, Object*, we can now expand it thus :—

Subject + attribute | Verb + adverbial expression | Object + attribute.

The terms that follow the + in each case do not of course always occur, but when they do occur they must be taken with the terms that precede the +.

Take for example the following sentences :—

Mors honesta saepe vitam turpem exornat, *An honourable death often covers with glory a disgraceful life.*

Viri fortes in acie vulnera non sentiunt, *Brave men do not feel wounds in the midst of the battle.*

We should arrange them thus :—

SUBJECT-PHRASE.	VERB-PHRASE.	OBJECT-PHRASE.
Mors honesta	saepe exornat	vitam turpem.
Viri fortes	in acie non sentiunt	vulnera.

Now if we use the term *Attributive* to denote an Attribute or Attributive expression, and the term *Adverbial* to denote an Adverb or Adverbial expression, we may represent our expanded type-form thus :—

SUBJECT-PHRASE.	VERB-PHRASE.	OBJECT-PHRASE.
Subject + Attributive.	Verb + Adverbial.	Object + Attributive.

The learner should be taught to arrange simple sentences in this fashion, and in construing, to give the English for the words in each division collectively and not separately; for example,

Mausolus, rex Cariae | habuit | Artemisiam coniugem,

and not to render it word by word, thus—Mausolus, *Mausolus*; rex, *king*; Cariae, *of Caria*.

## VERBAL NOUNS.

## I. THE INFINITIVE.

79. The Latin Infinitive is to be regarded as a Neuter Noun, used occasionally as a nominative, and very frequently as an accusative.

The Infinitive may, as a nominative, be the *subject* of a sentence, as—

*Turpe est invidere, To be envious is disgraceful.*

*Nunquam est utile peccare, To do wrong is never expedient.*

The Infinitive may, as an accusative, be the *object* of a verb, as—

*Dormire cupio, I long to go to sleep.*

The Infinitive governs the same case as the verb to which it belongs, as—

*Cupio te videre, I desire to see you.*

The Infinitive is qualified by adverbs and not by adjectives, as—

*Difficile est longum subito deponere amorem.—Ov.*

*It is hard to put aside suddenly love that is of long standing.*

80. The Infinitive Mood in Latin contains, in the Active Voice, two simple tenses, called—

I. Present, as *Amare, to love.*

II. Past, as *Amavisse, to have loved.*

*N.B.*—The words *Present* and *Past* are here used by custom and for convenience. These tenses of the Infinitive refer to the *state* of the action, as incomplete or complete, and take their *time* from the context of the sentence.

The Future is expressed by a compound tense : see § 88.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

	CONJUGATION 1.	CONJUGATION 2.	CONJUGATION 3.	CONJUGATION 4.
PRESENT,	amāre.	mōnere.	rēgere.	audire.
PAST,	amāvissē.	mōnuissē.	rexissē.	audivissē.

81. Many verbs are followed by an Infinitive expressing the object of the verb; for example, out of the list in § 69, *incipio, paro, scio, disco, veto, opto*:—

*Vincere incipit dolorem timor, Fear begins to get the mastery over pain.*

*In nemus ire parant, They prepare to go into the grove.—VIRG.*  
*Vincere scis, You know how to conquer.*

*Vulneribus didicit miles habere metum, By wounds the soldier has learnt to feel alarm.—OV.*

*Ab opere milites Caesar discedere vetuerat, Caesar had forbidden the soldiers to discontinue their work.*

*Piger optat arare caballus, The lazy hack desires to drag the plough.—HOR.*

## II. THE SUPINES.

82. Two verbal forms, called **Supines** (a word without meaning), are in reality Nouns with the endings *-um* and *-u* of the accusative and ablative cases of the U declension.

Thus the supines of

<i>amo</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>amātum</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>amātū,</i>
<i>moneo</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>monitum</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>monitū,</i>
<i>dico</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>dictum</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>dictū,</i>
<i>audio</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>auditum</i>	<i>„</i>	<i>auditū.</i>

The supine in *-um* is used to express the *purpose* of an action:—

*Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium, The Aedui send envoys to Caesar to beg for help.*

*Lacedaemonii Agesilaum bellatum miserunt in Asiam, The Spartans sent Agesilaus into Asia to wage war.*

Also with verbs of motion, as *Ire lusum, to go to play.*

The supine in *-u* is chiefly used with certain adjectives:—

*Perfacile est factu, It is very easy of execution.*

*Turpe dictu est, It is shameful to mention.*

83. Leaving out the endings *-um* and *-u* we get the **Supine Stem**; and this is of great importance, for from it are formed

the Past and Future Participles of Verbs (§ 88), and with it are connected—

(1.) The chief part of the nouns of the U declension ; thus—

VERB.	SUPINE.	U-NOUN (MASCULINE).
cado	cāsum	cāsus.
cano	cantum	cantus.
curro	cursum	cursus.

(2.) A very large class of consonant-nouns ending in *-tor* and *-sor*, denoting *agents* ; thus—

VERB.	SUPINE.	R-NOUN (MASCULINE).
amo	amātum	amātor, <i>lover</i> .
moneo	monitum	monitor, <i>monitor</i> .
suadeo	suasum	suasor, <i>adviser</i> .
rego	rectum	rektor, <i>ruler</i> .
scribo	scriptum	scriptor, <i>writer</i> .
audio	auditum	auditor, <i>hearer</i> .

(3.) A great number of Abstract Nouns in *-io*, expressing *action*, all feminine ; as—

VERB.	SUPINE.	NOUN IN <i>-io</i> .
āgo	actum	actio, <i>action</i> .
ēmo	emptum	emptio, <i>purchase</i> .
dēdo	deditum	editio, <i>surrender</i> .
moneo	monitum	monitio, <i>warning</i> .
suadeo	suasum	suasio, <i>advice</i> .

### III. THE GERUNDS.

84. The verbal forms called *Gerunds* (from *gerere*, to carry on), as *amandi*, *amando*, *amandum*, may be regarded as cases of a Neuter Noun. They correspond to English verbals, such as *fighting*, *singing*, *living*, and are often used in turning such verbals into Latin when they are preceded in English by a preposition.

The Genitive and Ablative forms are frequently found :—

*Gen.* Catonis filius amore pugnandi in exercitu remansit,  
*Cato's son, through love of fighting, stayed with the troops.*

*Abl.* Nihil agendo homines male agere discunt, *By doing nothing men learn to do ill.*

The Accusative is generally qualified by an adverb, and is chiefly used with the prepositions *ad* and *in*.

Breve tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bene vivendum,  
*A short life is long enough for living well.*

The Dative is seldom used : it occurs in the phrase, *Solvendo esse*, *to be able to pay one's debts*. Ovid describes a frog as having *Crura apta natando*, *legs adapted to swimming*.

85. A Gerund may be followed by the same case as that which follows the verb to which the gerund belongs, thus—

Nulla causa contra patriam arma capiendi est justa, *No reason for taking up arms against one's native land is defensible.*

## VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

### I. THE GERUNDIVE.

86. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective declined like *Durus*, as *amandus*, *amanda*, *amandum*. The nominative generally occurs in a passive sense ; examples are—

Nomina nova novis rebus sunt ponenda, *New names must be given to new things.*

Delenda est Carthago, *Carthage must be destroyed.*

Tempori serviendum est, *One must adapt one's-self to circumstances.*

87. When the gerund would be followed by an accusative, the gerundive is generally used, standing in the same case as that in which the gerund would have stood. The noun is then put in the case of the gerundive, and the gerundive is made to agree with the noun in number and gender.

Thus to express "a reason for changing a plan," we might have

*causa mutandi consilium* (Gerund),

but much more commonly we find

*causa mutandi consilii* (Gerundive).

The following are examples of the use of the gerundive :—

*Gen.* Clodius causam mutandi consilii finxit, *Clodius framed a pretext for changing his plan.*

*Dat.* Me Albani gerendo bello ducem creaverunt, *The Albans have made me their leader for carrying on the war.*

*Acc.* Locus pro castris erat ad aciem instruendam natura idoneus, *There was a spot in front of the camp naturally adapted for drawing up a line of battle.*

*Abl.* Librum de contemnenda morte scripsit Cicero, *Cicero wrote a book on contempt of death.*

## II. THE PARTICIPLES.

88. The Participles may be regarded as Verbal adjectives.

A. Transitive Verb in Latin has usually three Participles, called

(Active) Present, as *amans*, *loving*; declined like *recens*.

(Active) Future, as *amaturus*, *about to love*, declined like *durus*.

(Passive) Past, as *amatus*, *beloved*, declined like *durus*.

Intransitive Verbs have only the Active Participles, thus from *curro*, *I run*, we have *currens* and *cursurus*; and in some cases the neuter of the Past Participle, as *pugnatum*, from *pugno* (see p. 103).

1. The Present Participle ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the other three, thus :—

I. *oro*, *I beseech*,                      *orans*, *beseeching*.

II. *fleo*, *I weep*,                      *flens*, *weeping*.

III. *scribo*, *I write*,                      *scribens*, *writing*.

IV. *audio*, *I hear*,                      *audiens*, *hearing*.

2. The Future Participle is used to express a purpose, as—

*Galli legatos pacem petituros Romam miserunt*, *The Gauls sent envoys to Rome to sue for peace.*

The Present and Past tenses of the Infinitive of *sum*, which are *esse* and *fuisse*, are combined with the Future Parti-

ciples of other verbs to form Future tenses for the Infinitive Mood, as *amaturus esse*, *to be about to love*, and *amaturus fuisse*, *to have been about to love*.

*Sum* has a simple future, *förē*, and a compound future, *fütürus esse*, in its Infinitive mood.

3. The Past Participle is very extensively used.

The Perfect tenses of the Passive voice are formed by combining this participle with parts of the verb *sum*; thus—

*amatus sum*, *I have been loved*, or, *I was loved*.

*victus est*, *He has been conquered*, or, *He was conquered*.

*victus erat*, *He had been conquered*.

NOTE.—This participle is often used in quick and lively narration as a predicate without the insertion of any copula; thus—

*Fusi hostes*, *The enemy were routed*.

*Oppidum captum*, *The town was taken*.

So also the Gerundive—

*Laudandus Regulus*, *Regulus is deserving of praise*.

*Nil desperandum*, *There is no need for despair*.

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

89. The Imperative is used to express a Command or Entreaty.

It has but one tense, the forms of which are applicable to the immediate or remote future.

### Conjugation 1.

SING. *āmā* or *āmātō*, *love thou*.

*āmātō*, *let him love*.

PLUR. *āmātē* or *āmātōtē*, *love ye*.

*āmantō*, *let them love*.

### Conjugation 3.

SING. *rēgē* or *rēgītō*, *rule thou*.

*rēgītō*, *let him rule*.

PLUR. *rēgītē* or *rēgītōtē*, *rule ye*.

*rēguntō*, *let them rule*.

### Conjugation 2.

*mōnē*, *mōnētō*, *advise thou*.

*mōnētō*, *let him advise*.

*mōnēte*, *mōnētōtē*, *advise ye*.

*mōnentō*, *let them advise*.

### Conjugation 4.

*audī* or *audito*, *hear thou*.

*audītō*, *let him hear*.

*audītē* or *audītōtē*, *hear ye*.

*audiuntō*, *let them hear*.

Da spatium vitae, multos da, Iuppiter, annos, *Grant length of life, grant, O Jupiter, many years.*—JUV.

Solvite me, pueri, *Release me, boys.*—VIRG.

*Ne* is used as a negative with the imperative—

Tu ne cede malis, *Yield not to misfortunes.*—VIRG.

O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori, *O handsome boy, trust not too much to beauty.*—VIRG.

The forms in *-to* and *-tote* are apparently used by prose writers with *emphasis*—

Ad me litteras mitte, *Send me a letter.*

Ad me litteras mittito, *Be sure you send me a letter.*

### *Imperative Mood of SUM.*

SING. *es* or *estō*, *be thou.*

*estō*, *let him be.*

PLUR. *estē* or *estōtē*, *be ye.*

*suntō*, *let them be.*

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

90. The Subjunctive is the mood of—

1. Suggestion, as distinguished from Command (Imperative).
2. Thought, as distinguished from Fact (Indicative).

It has four tenses, two Imperfect and two Perfect. The English renderings of these tenses are various, and must be learnt by the translation of Latin sentences.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### IMPERFECT TENSES.

	Conjugation 1.	Conjugation 2.	Conjugation 3.	Conjugation 4.
	PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
SING.	1. <i>amem.</i>	<i>moneam.</i>	<i>regam.</i>	<i>audiam.</i>
	2. <i>amēs.</i>	<i>moneās.</i>	<i>regās.</i>	<i>audiās.</i>
	3. <i>amet.</i>	<i>moneāt.</i>	<i>regāt.</i>	<i>audiāt.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>amēmūs.</i>	<i>moneāmūs.</i>	<i>regāmūs.</i>	<i>audiāmus.</i>
	2. <i>amētīs.</i>	<i>moneātīs.</i>	<i>regātīs.</i>	<i>audiātīs.</i>
	3. <i>ament.</i>	<i>moneant.</i>	<i>regāt.</i>	<i>audiant.</i>



IMPERFECT TENSES—*continued.*

	Conjugation 1.	Conjugation 2.	Conjugation 3.	Conjugation 4.
	PAST.	PAST.	PAST.	PAST.
SING.	1. <i>āmārem.</i> 2. <i>āmārēs.</i> 3. <i>āmārēt.</i>	1. <i>mōnērem.</i> 2. <i>mōnērēs.</i> 3. <i>mōnērēt.</i>	1. <i>rēgērem.</i> 2. <i>rēgērēs.</i> 3. <i>rēgērēt.</i>	1. <i>audīrem.</i> 2. <i>audīrēs.</i> 3. <i>audirēt.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>āmārēmūs.</i> 2. <i>āmārētīs.</i> 3. <i>āmārent.</i>	1. <i>mōnērēmūs.</i> 2. <i>mōnērētīs.</i> 3. <i>mōnērent.</i>	1. <i>rēgērēmūs.</i> 2. <i>rēgērētīs.</i> 3. <i>rēgērent.</i>	1. <i>audirēmūs.</i> 2. <i>audirētīs.</i> 3. <i>audirent.</i>

## PERFECT TENSES.

	PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
SING.	1. <i>āmāvērim.</i> 2. <i>āmāvērīs.</i> 3. <i>āmāvērit.</i>	1. <i>mōnuērim.</i> 2. <i>mōnuērīs.</i> 3. <i>mōnuērīt.</i>	1. <i>rexērim.</i> 2. <i>rexērīs.</i> 3. <i>rexērīt.</i>	1. <i>audivērim.</i> 2. <i>audivērīs.</i> 3. <i>audivērīt.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>āmāvērīmūs.</i> 2. <i>āmāvērītīs.</i> 3. <i>āmāvērint.</i>	1. <i>mōnuērīmūs.</i> 2. <i>mōnuērītīs.</i> 3. <i>mōnuērint.</i>	1. <i>rexērīmūs.</i> 2. <i>rexērītīs.</i> 3. <i>rexērint.</i>	1. <i>audivērīmūs.</i> 2. <i>audivērītīs.</i> 3. <i>audivērint.</i>
	PAST.	PAST.	PAST.	PAST.
SING.	1. <i>āmāvissem.</i> 2. <i>āmāvisseēs.</i> 3. <i>āmāvissett.</i>	1. <i>mōnuissem.</i> 2. <i>mōnuisseēs.</i> 3. <i>mōnuissett.</i>	1. <i>rexissem.</i> 2. <i>rexisseēs.</i> 3. <i>rexissett.</i>	1. <i>audivissem.</i> 2. <i>audivisseēs.</i> 3. <i>audivissett.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>āmāvisseēmūs.</i> 2. <i>āmāvissettīs.</i> 3. <i>āmāvissent.</i>	1. <i>mōnuisseēmūs.</i> 2. <i>mōnuissettīs.</i> 3. <i>mōnuissent.</i>	1. <i>rexisseēmūs.</i> 2. <i>rexissettīs.</i> 3. <i>rexissent.</i>	1. <i>audivisseēmūs.</i> 2. <i>audivissettīs.</i> 3. <i>audivissent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood of SUM.*

## IMPERFECT TENSES.

	PRESENT.		PAST.
SING.	1. <i>sim.</i> 2. <i>sis.</i> 3. <i>sīt.</i>	SING.	1. <i>essem or fōrem.</i> 2. <i>essēs or fōrēs.</i> 3. <i>essēt or fōrēt.</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>simus.</i> 2. <i>sitis.</i> 3. <i>sint.</i>	PLUR.	1. <i>essēmūs or fōrēmūs.</i> 2. <i>essētīs or fōrētīs.</i> 3. <i>essent or fōrent.</i>

## PERFECT TENSES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
SING.	1. fūerim.	SING.	1. fuissem.
	2. fūeris.		2. fuissēs.
	3. fūerit.		3. fuissēt.
PLUR.	1. fūerimus.	PLUR.	1. fuissēmus.
	2. fūeritis.		2. fuissētis.
	3. fūerint.		3. fuissent.

91. The Subjunctive is used in the simple sentence to express a wish, a prayer, an exhortation, or a warning.

1. A wish, with or without *utinam*, *O that* :—

*Sis felix, May you be happy.*

*Utinam tuis litteris paruisssem, Would that I had followed the advice of your letter !*

*Utinam frater meus viveret, Would that my brother were still living !*

2. A prayer—

*Det vitam, det opes, May he (Jupiter) grant me life ! may he grant me wealth !—Hor.*

3. An exhortation, generally in the plural, supplying the want of a first person in the Imperative—

*Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, Let us love our country, let us obey the senate.*

4. A warning against doing something, with the negative *ne*.

The perfect is generally used when a particular person is addressed—

*Ne me monueris, Do not advise me.*

*Ne mortem timueris, Do not fear death.*

92. Of the eight kinds into which Latin words are divided, we have already mentioned six, viz., Verb, Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, Preposition, and Adverb. The remaining two are the Conjunction and the Interjection.

**INTERJECTIONS.**

93. These are either sounds expressing sudden feelings, as of joy, sorrow, approbation ; as, *Io, Hurrah ! Heu, Alas ! Euge, Well done !* or abbreviated sentences, as—

mehercule = me, Hercule, iuves, *So help me, Hercules.*

medius fidius = me Deus Fidius iuvet, *So may the God of Faith help me.*

94. Interjections are followed by various cases—

Vocative—*Io triumphe, Hurrah for the triumph !*

Accusative—*O hominem felicem, What a happy fellow !*

Nominative—*O vir fortis, What a brave man !*

Dative—*Vae victis, Woe to the vanquished !*

## PART II.

### THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

95. A Compound Sentence contains two or more Simple Sentences.

If they are connected, but grammatically independent of each other, they are called **Co-ordinate Sentences**.

If they are not independent of each other, one is called the **Principal Sentence**, and the others **Subordinate Sentences**.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

96. Conjunctions are uninflected words used to join words to words, phrases to phrases, and sentences to sentences. They may be arranged in two classes :—

- I. **Co-ordinative Conjunctions**, which join words to words, phrases to phrases, and co-ordinate sentences to co-ordinate sentences.
- II. **Subordinative Conjunctions**, which join subordinate sentences to principal sentences.

#### I. CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

97. These may be conveniently divided into six kinds :—

1. Copulative Conjunctions, as *et*, *and*; *etiam*, *also*.
2. Disjunctive Conjunctions, as *aut*, *or*.
3. Adversative Conjunctions, as *sed*, *but*.
4. Inferential Conjunctions, as *igitur*, *therefore*.
5. Causal Conjunctions, as *nam*, *for*.
6. Comparative Conjunctions, as *ut*, *as*.

98. In this and the following Sections, to § 102, is a list of the Co-ordinative Conjunctions used in the sentences of Part II. :—

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.—*And*-words—

*et*, *and*. *Deus mundum sustinet et gubernat*, *God upholds and regulates the universe.*

*-que*, *and*, which is always annexed to the end of a word—  
*Deo maria terraeque oboediunt*, *Seas and lands obey God.*—CIC.

*Pan curat oves oviumque magistros*, *Pan cares for sheep and shepherds too.*—VIRG.

*atque*, *and*. *Galli Caesaris gratiam atque amicitiam quaerebant*, *The Gauls were trying to win the favour and friendship of Caesar.*

*ac*, *and*, which should never be followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h*—

*Mors est laborum ac miseriarum finis*, *Death is the end of toils and troubles.*

NOTE 1.—*Que* connects more closely than *et*, the words united by *que* often making up a single notion, as in the phrase *Senatus populusque Romanus*.

NOTE 2.—*Atque* and *ac* are often used when the word that follows is more emphatic than that which precedes, so that the sense is, *and moreover*—

*Te rogo atque oro*, *I beg, nay I implore you.*

NOTE 3.—Copulative Conjunctions are frequently doubled; thus—

*Et longum est iter et non tutum*, *The road is long and unsafe.*

*Que . . . que* is almost restricted to poetry, as

*Munera, crede mihi, capiunt hominesque deosque*, *Gifts, take my word for it, win the favour of men and gods.*

NOTE 4.—*Et* often means *even*, as

*Et puero est perspicuum*, *Even a child can understand it.*

99. A verb referring to two or more personal subjects is put in the plural, as

Romulus et Remus gemini fratres erant, *Romulus and Remus were twin brothers.*

When the subjects are not all *persons* this rule is not always observed, because the subjects are sometimes regarded as making up one single notion, thus—

Homines caecos reddit cupiditas et avaritia, *Greed and covetousness make men blind.*

When more than two subjects are named, connect *all* with conjunctions or *none*, thus—

Pompeius et Caesar et Crassus, *or Pompeius, Caesar, Crassus.*

When one of the subjects is in the *first* person, the verb is in the first person—

Ego et Cicero valemus, *Cicero and I are well.*

When one of the subjects is in the *second* person, and no one of them in the first person, the verb is usually in the second person, but sometimes in the third—

Si tu et Tullia valetis, *If Tullia and you are well.*

Et tu et omnes homines sciunt, *You and all men know.*

100. An adjective placed as an attribute of two or more nouns is put in the plural, and in the masculine gender if one of the nouns be masculine—

Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, *My father and my mother are dead.*

Metellum multi filii, filiae, nepotes, neptes in rogam imposuerunt, *Many sons, daughters, grandsons, and grand-daughters placed Metellus on the funeral pile.*

If the nouns are things that have not life, the adjective is usually in the neuter—

Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et iniuria, *A benefit and a wrong are contrary to each other.*

Sometimes the adjective agrees with the noun nearest to it—

Me Romae viri et mulieres multae viderunt, *Many men and women saw me at Rome.*

Notice carefully how emphasis is obtained by separating an adjective from its noun by words on which both depend—

Iustitia omnium est domina et regina virtutum, *Justice is mistress and queen of ALL the virtues.*

101. Quoque and Etiam are the Latin words for *also*.

NOTE 1.—Quoque generally qualifies the word after which it stands—

Tu quoque me deseris, *You too forsake me.*

Amavit nos quoque Daphnis, *Daphnis loved us too.*—VIRG.

NOTE 2.—Etiam atque etiam = *again and again*.

Etiam nunc = *even now*.

Non modo . . . sed etiam = *not merely . . . but even*.

Non solum . . . sed etiam = *not only . . . but also*.

102. 2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.—*Or*-words.

The Latin equivalents for *or* are aut, vel, -ve, sive, and seu. -ve, like -que, is always attached to the end of a word.

NOTE 1.—aut . . . aut = *either . . . or*.

vel . . . vel = *either . . . or*.

-ve . . . -ve = *either . . . or*.

NOTE 2.—nec . . . nec = *neither . . . nor*.

neque . . . neque = *neither . . . nor*.

NOTE 3.—sive . . . seu = *whether . . . or*.

seu . . . seu = *whether . . . or*.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.—*But*-words.

Of these the most common are—sed, *but*; autem, *but*; tamen, *but still*; at, *but yet*; verum, *but in fact*.

4. INFERENTIAL CONJUNCTIONS.—*Therefore*-words.

Igitur, *therefore*; ergo, *therefore*; itaque, *and thus*.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS.—*For*-words.

Nam, *for*; enim, *for*; namque, *for*; etenim, *for*.

6. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.—*As*-words.

Ut, *as*; quam, *than* or *as*; quasi, *as if*; tamquam, *as it were*.

## PRONOUNS.

## 103. I. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## (1.) Ego, I.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. ego.	Nom. nōs.
Gen. mei.	Gen. nostrum.
Dat. mihi.	Dat. nobis.
Acc. mē.	Acc. nōs.
Abl. mē.	Abl. nobis.

## (2.) Tu, thou.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. tū.	Nom. vōs.
Gen. tui.	Gen. vestrum.
Dat. tibi.	Dat. vōbis.
Acc. tē.	Acc. vōs.
Voc. tū.	Voc. vōs.
Abl. tē.	Abl. vōbis.

NOTE.—For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* we often find the singular forms *Nostri* and *Vestri*, when several persons are spoken of as a collective body.

*Nostri* and *Vestri* often occur where we might expect *mei* and *tui*.

## (3.) Sui, of himself.

This pronoun is called *reflexive*, because it refers to a subject of the Third Person already mentioned in the sentence, and usually the subject of the sentence. It has no nominative, and is declined thus :—



## SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

*Gen.* sūi, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

*Dat.* sibi.

*Acc.* sē }  
*Abl.* sē } ; the double form, sēsē, is often used.

NOTE 1.—The preposition *cum* is placed *after* the ablatives of the Personal Pronouns, as *mecum*, *with me*; *vobiscum*, *with you*; *secum*, *with himself*.

NOTE 2.—The syllable *met*, implying the notion of *self*, is added to many of the cases of these Pronouns to make emphatic forms, as *egomet*, *I myself*, *nosmet*, *vobismet*, *sibimet*.

## 104. II. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These correspond to *Ego*, *Tu*, and *Sui*: they are—

meus, <i>mine</i>	}	declined like <i>Durus</i> , except that <i>Mi</i> is the vocative masculine of <i>Meus</i> , and <i>Tuus</i> and <i>Suus</i> have no vocative masculine.
tuus, <i>thine</i>		
suus, <i>his, her, or their</i>		
noster, <i>our</i>	}	declined like <i>Ater</i> .
vester, <i>your</i>		

The syllable *-pte* is added in some cases of the Possessives, chiefly the Ablative Singular, as *meapte causa*, *for my own sake*; *nostrapte culpa*, *by our own fault*; *suopte pondere*, *by its own weight*.

105. III. THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS *Is* and *Qui*.

(1.) Declension of *Is*, *ea*, *id*, *that*.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Is</i>	ēā	īd	<i>Nom.</i>	ēī	ēāe ēā
<i>Gen.</i>		ēīūs		<i>Gen.</i>	ēōrum	ēārum ēōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		ēī		<i>Dat.</i>		ēīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ēum	ēam	īd	<i>Acc.</i>	ēos	ēas ēā
<i>Abl.</i>	ēō	ēā	ēō	<i>Abl.</i>		ēis

NOTE 1.—*Is, ea, id* may stand as *nouns* for *he, she, it*, or as *adjectives*, thus—*is lōcus, ea res, id bellum*.

NOTE 2.—The plural forms *ei* and *eis* are often written *ii* and *iii*.

(2.) Declension of the relative *Qui, quae, quod, who or which*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>Nom. qui</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cūius</i>		<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>cui</i>			<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibūs or quīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>Acc. quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>
				<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibūs or quīs</i>

NOTE 1.—An old form of the ablative, *quī*, of all genders, is found. Standing without a preposition it generally means *how*, *in what way*, and it is used with *cum* annexed, thus, *quicum, with whom*.

NOTE 2.—A possessive pronoun, *cūius, cūia, cūium*, is derived from the genitive of *qui*, with the meaning *to whom does it belong?* as, *cuium pecus, whose flock is it?*

106. *Qui* usually agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends on the construction of the clause to which it belongs—

*Caesar obsides, quos habuit ab Aeduis, reddidit, Caesar restored the hostages of the Aedui whom he had in his hands.*

*Honorem mortuo, cui iniuriam vivo fecimus, faciamus, Let us do honour to the dead man, to whom, when he was alive, we did wrong.*

*Tibi versus, quos rogas, mittam, I will send you the verses for which you ask.*

*Audire quae dicis, I hear what you say.*

*Bellum scripturus sum, quod populus Romanus cum Iugurtha rege Numidarum gessit, I am about to write the history of the war which the Romans waged with Jugurtha, king of Numidia.*

But sometimes the relative agrees in gender and number with a noun in its own clause—

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est, *Thebes, the capital of Boeotia.*

107. *Is* and *qui* are essentially conjunctive words, linking sentences together—

Luna eam lucem, quam a sole accepit, mittit in terras,  
*The moon sends to the earth the light she has received from the sun.*

Nunc respondebo ad eas epistolas, quas mihi reddidit  
L. Caesius, *I will now reply to the letters which Lucius Caesius handed to me.*

Observe that in these examples *eam* and *eas* are not necessary to the sense, but are put in to balance the sentences.

When emphasis is required for the sentence with *is*, the *qui*-sentence is put first—

Quod dixi, id non mutabo, *That which I have once said I will not alter.*

Quod honestum, id bonum, *That which is right is good.*

#### 108. IV. THE INTERROGATIVE QUIS, *who* ?

##### SINGULAR.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis or qui	quis or quae	quid or quod
<i>Gen.</i>		cuius	
<i>Dat.</i>		cui	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid or quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

##### PLURAL.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		quibus or quīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>		quibus or quīs	

The general rule in Latin *prose* is that the forms—

qui, quae, quod are used as adjectives ;

quis, quis, quid are used as nouns.

For example—

Quis tu es?      Quis id fecit?

Quid videras?    Quid senseras?    Quid audiveras?

But—

Qui tu vir et quantus fuisses?    *What and how great a man would you have been?*

Quae mulier est tam mollis?    *What woman is so soft-hearted?*

Quae anus est tam delira?    *What old woman is so crazy?*

#### V. THE INDEFINITE QUIS, any one.

109. This Pronoun is declined like Quis, *who?* except that it has a third form *quā* for the nominative feminine singular, and for the nominative and accusative neuter plural. It is much used with the conjunction *Si, if*—

Si qua tui Corydonis habet te cura, venito, *If you have any thought about your Corydon, come.*—VIRG.

Si qua manent sceleris vestigia nostri, *If any traces of our crime remain.*—VIRG.

#### 110. VI. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1.) Hic, *this*, near me, the speaker.

Iste, *that*, near you, the person spoken to.

Ille, *that*, yonder, at a distance from the speaker and the person spoken to.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. hic	haec	hōc	Nom. hī	hae	haec
Gen. hūius			Gen. horum	harum	horum
Dat. huic			Dat. his		
Acc. hunc	hanc	hōc	Acc. hōs	hās	haec
Abl. hōc	hāc	hōc	Abl. his		

*Hic* and *hoc*, in the nom. and acc., are usually long.

The emphasizing suffix *-ce* is often added, as *hujusce*, *hosce*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> istē	istā	istud	<i>Nom.</i> isti	istae	istā
<i>Gen.</i> istius			<i>Gen.</i> istorum	istarum	istorum
<i>Dat.</i> isti			<i>Dat.</i> istis		
<i>Acc.</i> istum	istam	istud	<i>Acc.</i> istos	istas	istā
<i>Abl.</i> isto	istā	isto	<i>Abl.</i> istis		

The addition of the suffix *-c* introduces other forms; as—

*Nom.* istic, istaec, istōc.  
*Acc.* istunc, istanc, istoc.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> illē	illā	illud	<i>Nom.</i> illi	illae	illā
<i>Gen.</i> illius			<i>Gen.</i> illorum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i> illi			<i>Dat.</i> illis		
<i>Acc.</i> illum	illam	illud	<i>Acc.</i> illos	illas	illā
<i>Abl.</i> illo	illā	illo	<i>Abl.</i> illis		

Old forms are *ollus, olla, olli, ollis, ollos*.

The addition of the suffix *-c* introduces such forms as—

*Nom.* illic, illaec, illōc.  
*Acc.* illunc, illanc, illoc.

NOTE 1.—*Hic*, as referring to the present time, is often contrasted with *ille*, referring to past events—

Q. Catulus non antiquo illo more sed hoc nostro fuit eruditus, *Quintus Catulus was trained, not after the ancient fashion but in the way that is now in vogue.*

NOTE 2.—*Ille* is often emphatic—

Hic est ille Demosthenes, *This is the famous Demosthenes.*

111. Closely connected with the Pronouns *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are the following adverbs of place:—

Hic, <i>here</i> , where I am.	Hinc, <i>from hence</i> , from where I am.
Istic, <i>there</i> , where you are.	Istinc, <i>from thence</i> , from where you are.
Illic, <i>yonder</i> , where he is.	Illinc, <i>from yonder</i> , from where he is.
	Hūc, <i>hither</i> , to where I am.
	Istūc, <i>thither</i> , to where you are.
	Illūc, <i>to yonder place</i> , where he is.

Hic tui omnes valent, *All your friends here are well.*

Tu istic mane, *Keep where you are.*

In ea via quae est hinc in Indiam, *On the route from this country to India.*

Qui istinc veniunt, *They who come from your country.*

### 112. (2.) Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eādem	idem	<i>N.</i> eidem	eaedem	eādem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem		<i>G.</i> eorundem	earundem	eorundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eidem		<i>D.</i>	eisdem	
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	<i>Ac.</i> eosdem	easdem	eādem
<i>Abl.</i> eodem	eādem	eodem	<i>Ab.</i>	eisdem	

For the *Nom. Pl.*, *eidem*, we find the contracted form, *idem*, and for *eisdem* we find *isdem*.

### 113. (3.) Ipse, the person himself.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	<i>Nom.</i> ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius		<i>Gen.</i> ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsi		<i>Dat.</i>	ipsis	
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	<i>Acc.</i> ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipso	ipsā	ipso	<i>Abl.</i>	ipsis	

A form of the nominative, *ipsus*, is frequent in old writers; hence comes the superlative, *ipsissimus*.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

114. Here we may notice some Adjectives which may be regarded as partaking of the nature of Pronouns, and in which the Genitive and Dative Singular are formed like those of *Iste*, *Ille*, *Ipsē*. They are—

<i>Alius</i> , <i>another</i> .	<i>Solus</i> , <i>alone</i> .
<i>Alter</i> , <i>one of two</i> .	<i>Totus</i> , <i>whole</i> .
<i>Ullus</i> , <i>any</i> .	<i>Uter</i> , <i>which of two</i> .
<i>Nullus</i> , <i>none</i> .	<i>Neuter</i> , <i>neither</i> .

The plurals of these are declined like those of *durus* and *ater*; the singulars as follows:—

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>alter</i>	<i>altēra</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>alius</i>			<i>Gen.</i> <i>alterius</i>		
<i>Dat.</i> <i>alii</i>			<i>Dat.</i> <i>alteri</i>		
<i>Acc.</i> <i>aliū</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>alterum</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>alio</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>alio</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>altero</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>altero</i>

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ullus</i>	<i>ullā</i>	<i>ullum</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>uter</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ullus</i>			<i>Gen.</i> <i>utrius</i>		
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ulli</i>			<i>Dat.</i> <i>utri</i>		
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ullum</i>	<i>ullā</i>	<i>ullum</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>utrum</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ullo</i>	<i>ullā</i>	<i>ullo</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>utro</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utro</i>

*Nullus*, *sōlus*, and *tōtus* are declined like *ullus*.

*Neuter* (ne-uter) is declined like *uter*.

NOTE.—The *i* of these genitives in *-ius* is of doubtful quantity, except that of *alius*, which is always long, as being contracted from *ali-ius*. *Alterius* usually has *i* short.

The plural word *Plērique*, *most people*, is thus declined:—

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>plerique</i> , <i>pleraeque</i> , <i>plerāque</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>plerisque</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>plerosque</i> , <i>plerasque</i> , <i>pleraque</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>plerisque</i> .

*Nēmō*, *nobody*, has *Dat.* *nemini*, and *Acc.* *neminem*.

The *Gen.* and *Abl.* are supplied by *nullius* and *nullo*.

## II.—SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

115. Of the Conjunctions which join a subordinate sentence to a principal sentence, we shall here mention only those which introduce a Final Sentence, that is, a sentence expressing the purpose or end of an action : such are—

Ut or uti, *so that, in order that.*

Quo, *in order that.*

Ne, *that . . . not.*

Quin, *but that.*

Quominus, *but that.*

The verb in the final sentence is always in the Subjunctive.

The following are examples of final sentences :—

Ego ad te Aegyptam misi, ut is tecum esset, *I sent Ægypta to you, that he might be with you.*

Ego vos, quo pauca monerem, advocavi, *I called you hither that I might give you some brief advice.*

Italiam reliquit Pomponius, ne contra Sullam pugnaret, *Pomponius left Italy, that he might not fight against Sulla.*

Te oro ut ad me de omnibus rebus scribas, *I beg of you to write to me upon all matters.*

Senatus decernit, uti Consules delectum habeant, *The Senate decrees that the Consuls shall make a levy.*

Senatus decrevit, uti Consules delectum haberent, *The Senate decreed that the Consuls should make a levy.*

Obsecro ne deseras me, *I implore you not to forsake me.*

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogas epigrammata, *You ask me to recite my epigrams to you.*—MART.

Hortensius non dubitavit quin Sullam defenderet, *Hortensius did not hesitate to defend Sulla.*

Quid obstat quominus hoc faciamus? *What prevents us from doing this?*

Infirmetas valetudinis me tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem, *Ill-health prevented me from attending the games.*

NOTE.—The last three may rather be regarded as Consecutive Sentences, expressing the result of actions.



## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

116. The tense of a verb in a subordinate sentence is dependent on the tense of the verb in the principal sentence.

If we arrange the Indicative tenses according to the time denoted by them, we get the following divisions :—

PRESENT TIME,	{ Scribo, <i>I am now writing.</i> Scripsi, <i>I have just now written.</i>
FUTURE TIME,	{ Scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i> Scripsero, <i>I shall have written.</i>
PAST TIME,	{ Scribebam, <i>I was writing.</i> Scripseram, <i>I had written.</i> Scripsi, <i>I wrote.</i>

Of these, the four tenses that relate to Present and Future time are called **Primary Tenses**, and the three that relate to Past time are called **Historic Tenses**.

The tenses of the Subjunctive do not mark time in the same way as the tenses of the Indicative ; but, for convenience' sake, of the four tenses in the Subjunctive,

the two Present Tenses are called *Primary*,  
the two Past Tenses are called *Historic*.

Then the general rule of sequence is, that in subordinate sentences

Primary Tenses follow Primary,  
Historic Tenses follow Historic.

Take for example the following sentences expressing purpose, in which the Imperfect tenses of the Subjunctive are appropriate :—

Scribo ut scias, <i>I am writing to let you know.</i>	} PRIMARY.
Scripsi ut scias, <i>I have written to let you know.</i>	
Scribam ut scias, <i>I will write to let you know.</i>	
Scripsero ut scias, <i>I shall have written to let you know.</i>	
Scribebam ut scires, <i>I was writing to let you know.</i>	} HISTORIC.
Scripseram ut scires, <i>I had written to let you know.</i>	
Scripsi ut scires, <i>I wrote to let you know.</i>	

NOTE.—Qui, followed by an Imperfect Subjunctive, is often used to express a purpose :—

Misi servum qui hoc tibi diceret, *I sent a slave to tell you this.*

Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qui pacem petant, *The Helvetii send envoys to Caesar to beg for peace.*

### DIRECT QUESTIONS.

117. Direct Questions are expressed in Latin writing—

(1.) By the mark of interrogation—

Audis? *Do you hear?*

Tibi ego aut tu mihi servus es? *Am I your slave,  
or rather are you mine?*

(2.) By appending *-ne* to a word in the sentence—

Vidistine unquam leporem candidum? *Did you ever  
see a white hare?*

(3.) By using *num*, when we expect the answer, no—

Num Centaurum vidisti? *Did you ever see a  
Centaur?*

(4.) By using *nonne*, when we expect the answer, yes—

Nonne ita est? *Is it not so?*

(5.) By using an interrogative adverb or pronoun—

Ubi inveniam Pamphilum? *Where am I to find  
Pamphilus?*

Cur perdis adolescentem nobis? *Why do you ruin  
the young man for us?*

Quid ego feci? *What have I done?*

Quam rem agis? *What are you about?*

Unde venis? *Whence comest thou?*

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

118. Quis Clodium interfecit? *Who slew Clodius?* is a direct question.

Rogo quis Clodium interfecerit, *I ask who slew Clodius*, is an indirect question.

The verb in the Subordinate clause is always in the Subjunctive, and the law of sequence of tenses is observed; thus—

Quaero quid agas, *I ask what you are doing.*

Quaeram quid egeris, *I shall ask what you have done.*

But—

Quaerebam quid ageres, *I was asking what you were doing.*

Quaesivi quid egisses, *I asked what you had done.*

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

119. Most adjectives are capable of two degrees of comparison, the Comparative and the Superlative. They are formed from the Positive in most cases by the following rules :—

I. In many adjectives—

the Comparative is formed by adding *-or*,

the Superlative is formed by adding *-ssimus*,

to the first case of the positive ending in *-i*: thus—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
durus, <i>hard</i> .	durior.	durissimus.
tristis, <i>sad</i> .	tristior.	tristissimus.

II. Adjectives ending in *-er* usually form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the positive; as—

tēner, <i>tender</i> .	tenērior.	tenerrimus.
pulcher, <i>fair</i> .	pulchrior.	pulcherrimus.

III. Fācilis, *easy*, makes faciliior, facillimus; and similarly are compared difficilis, *difficult*, similis, *like*, dissimilis, *unlike*, grācilis, *slender*, and hūmilis, *lowly*.

IV. Participles, Present and Past, admit of comparison: thus—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
indulgens, <i>humouring</i> .	indulgentior.	indulgentissimus.
pārātus, <i>prepared</i> .	paratior.	paratissimus.

NOTE 1.—The Comparative often expresses *too high* a degree of a quality, as *tristior*, *too sad*, *unusually sad*.

NOTE 2.—The Superlative often expresses a *very high* degree of a quality, as *doctissimus*, *extremely learned*.

NOTE 3.—A Comparative, like *Durior*, is declined thus :—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>durior</i>	<i>durit̃s</i>	<i>N. Ac. V.</i>	<i>duriorēs</i>	<i>duriorā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>durior̃s</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duriorum</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duriori</i>		<i>Dat. Abl.</i>	<i>duriorib̃s</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duriozem</i>	<i>durius</i>			
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duriorē</i>	(or -i)			

### IRREGULAR FORMS OF COMPARISON.

120. 1. Adjectives derived from the verbs *dico*, *I say*, *facio*, *I make*, *volo*, *I wish*, ending in -dicus, -ficus, -vulus, have Comparatives and Superlatives formed from the participles of the verbs; thus—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>māl̃dicus</i> , <i>slandorous</i> .	<i>maledicentior</i> .	<i>maledicentissimus</i> .
<i>mūnificus</i> , <i>liberal</i> .	<i>munificentior</i> .	<i>munificentissimus</i> .
<i>bēnēvulus</i> , <i>friendly</i> .	<i>benevolentior</i> .	<i>benevolentissimus</i> .

Similarly—

<i>ēgēnus</i> , <i>needy</i> .	<i>egentior</i> .	<i>egentissimus</i> .
<i>prōvīdus</i> , <i>cautious</i> .	<i>providentior</i> .	<i>providentissimus</i> .

2. The following are quite irregular—

<i>bōnus</i> , <i>good</i> .	<i>mēlior</i> .	<i>opt̃mus</i> .
<i>māl̃us</i> , <i>bad</i> .	<i>pēior</i> .	<i>pessimus</i> .
<i>magnus</i> , <i>great</i> .	<i>māior</i> .	<i>max̃mus</i> .
<i>parvus</i> , <i>small</i> .	<i>mīnor</i> .	<i>mīñmus</i> .
<i>multus</i> , <i>many</i> .	<i>plus</i> .	<i>pl̃rimus</i> .
<i>nēquam</i> , <i>wicked</i> .	<i>nēquior</i> .	<i>nēquissimus</i> .
<i>frūgi</i> , <i>honest</i> .	<i>frugālior</i> .	<i>frugalissimus</i> .
<i>pōt̃is</i> , <i>able</i> .	<i>pōt̃ior</i> .	<i>pōt̃issimus</i> .

NOTE.—Plus in the Sing. has only Nom., Gen., and Acc. Neuter, plus, plūris, plus; in the plur. we find Plūres, plura, plurium, pluribus.

Nequam, frugi, and potis (neut. pōtē) are indeclinable.

3. Other instances of irregular Comparison are—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prosp̄erus, <i>favourable.</i>	prosperior.	prosperrimus.
mātūrus, <i>ripe.</i>	maturior.	maturrimus.
imbēcillus, <i>weak.</i>	imbecillior.	imbecillimus.
ūtīlis, <i>useful.</i>	utilior.	utilissimus.
vētus, <i>old.</i>		veterrimus.
nōvus, <i>new.</i>		novissimus.
falsus, <i>false.</i>		falsissimus.
inclītus, <i>famous.</i>		inclitissimus.
sācer, <i>sacred.</i>		sacerrimus.
sērus, <i>late.</i>		serissimus.
āgilis, <i>active.</i>	agilior.	
dōcilis, <i>apt to learn.</i>	docilior.	
crēdībīlis, <i>worthy of belief.</i>	credibilior.	
flēbīlis, <i>lamentable.</i>	flebilior.	
prōbābīlis, <i>likely.</i>	probabilior.	
āter, <i>black.</i>	atrior.	
caecus, <i>blind.</i>	caecior.	
longinquus, <i>distant.</i>	longinquior.	
prōpinquus, <i>near.</i>	propinquier.	
surdus, <i>deaf.</i>	surdior.	
tērēs, <i>shapely.</i>	teretior.	
prōclivis, <i>sloping.</i>	proclivior.	
sēnex, <i>old.</i>	sēnior.	(maximus natu).
iūvenis, <i>young.</i>	iūnior.	(minimus natu).
	cit̄erior, <i>nearer to this side.</i>	cit̄imus.
	ext̄erior, <i>outer.</i>	extr̄emus.
	inf̄erior, <i>lower.</i>	inf̄imus or Imus.
	int̄erior, <i>inner.</i>	int̄imus.
	pr̄opior, <i>nearer.</i>	prox̄imus.
	post̄erior, <i>later.</i>	post̄r̄emus.
	sūp̄erior, <i>higher.</i>	sup̄r̄emus.
	ult̄erior, <i>further.</i>	ult̄imus.
	dēt̄erior, <i>worse.</i>	dēt̄err̄imus.
	ōcior, <i>quicker.</i>	ōciss̄imus.

NOTE.—The Superlative is often written -umus instead of imus, as opt̄umus.

121. Many adjectives have no degrees of comparison ; as—

1. Those denoting a material, as *aureus*, *ferreus* ; those denoting nationality, as *Graecus*, *Romanus* ; and those which, from their meaning, do not admit of comparison, as *vivus*, *living*, *pedester*, *on foot*.
2. Some denoting colour, as *albus*, *white*, *flavus*, *yellow*.
3. Some denoting time, as *aeternus*, *everlasting*, *diurnus*, *daily*, *nocturnus*, *nightly*.
4. Many ending in *-us* preceded by *e*, *i*, or *u*, as *idōneus*, *fit*, *dubius*, *doubtful*, *arduus*, *lofty*. But some ending in *-uus* have a superlative, as *strenuissimus*, *most energetic*, *assiduissimus*, *most persevering* ; rarely a comparative also, as *antiquior*, *more ancient*, *antiquissimus* ; *aequior*, *more just*, *aequissimus* ; *iniquior*, *more unjust*, *iniquissimus*.
5. Compounds of the verbs *fero*, *I bear*, and *gero*, *I carry* ; as *ignifer*, *fire-bearing* ; *armiger*, *carrying arms*.
6. Compounds in which the last part is a noun, as *inops*, *helpless*, *magnanimus*, *high-spirited*. But compounds of *ars*, *mens*, and *cor* are often compared, as *iners*, *inactive*, *sollers*, *skilful*, *demens*, *distracted*, *concors*, *harmonious*, *discors*, *discordant*.
7. Many which cannot be referred to any general rule ; as—*fērus*, *wild*, *mīrus*, *amazing*, *rūdis*, *uncultivated*, *trux*, *savage*, *mēmor*, *mindful*, *hostilis*, *hostile*, *nāturalis*, *natural*, and *finitimus*, *neighbouring*.

NOTE.—The adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maxime*, *most*, are used to express comparison, as *magis arduus*, *maxime idoneus*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

122. Adverbs derived from adjectives or participles admit of comparison; the general rule being that *or* of the comparative of the adjective is changed into *us*, and *us* of the superlative of the adjective is changed into *ē*: thus—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>Adjective</i> , doctus.	doctior.	doctissimus.
<i>Adverb</i> , doctē.	doctius.	doctissimē.

Other examples are—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
aegrē, <i>with difficulty</i> .	aegrius.	aegerimē.
facilē, <i>easily</i> .	facilius.	facillimē.
fortitēr, <i>bravely</i> .	fortius.	fortissimē.
acriter, <i>eagerly</i> .	acrius.	acerrimē.
audacter, <i>boldly</i> .	audacius.	audacissimē.
amanter, <i>lovingly</i> .	amantius.	amantissimē.
sāpienter, <i>wisely</i> .	sāpientius.	sāpientissimē.

123. When the Comparison of Adjectives is irregular or incomplete, so also is that of the adverbs derived from them.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bēnē, <i>well</i> .	mēlius.	optimē.
mālē, <i>badly</i> .	pēius.	pessimē.
multum, <i>much</i> .	plus.	plurimum.
paulum, <i>a little</i> .	mīnus.	minimē.
magnoperē, <i>greatly</i> .	māgis.	maximē.
	ūbērius, <i>more fully</i> .	uberrimē.
	dētērius, <i>worse</i> .	detrerimē.
	ōcius, <i>more quickly</i> .	ocissimē.
	pōtius, <i>rather</i> .	potissimum.
	prius, <i>before</i> .	primum.
nōvē, <i>newly</i> .		novissimē.
valdē, <i>vehemently</i> .	vāldius.	validissimē.

124. The following should also be noticed—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
saepe, <i>often</i> .	saepius.	saeplissimē.
diū, <i>for a long time</i> .	diutius.	diutissimē.
nūper, <i>lately</i> .		nuperrimē.
prōpe, <i>nearly</i> .	propius.	proximē.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
satis, <i>sufficiently.</i>	satius.	
sēcus, <i>otherwise.</i>	sētius or sēquius.	
intus, <i>within.</i>	intērius.	intimē.
extrā, <i>without.</i>	extērius.	
post, <i>after.</i>	postērius.	postremo.
sūprā, <i>above.</i>	sūpērius.	summē.
infra, <i>below.</i>	infērius.	
citrā, <i>on this side.</i>	citērius.	
ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>	ultērius.	ultimum.

125. After an adjective in the Comparative degree the thing which is made the standard of comparison is put—

(1.) In the Ablative—

Nihil est virtute formosius, nihil pulchrius, nihil amabilius, *Nothing is more beautiful, nothing more fair, nothing more lovely than virtue.*

O matre pulchrā filia pulchrior, *O daughter, fairer than thy fair mother!*—HOR.

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum, *Silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtues.*—HOR.

(2.) In the same case as the thing compared with it, the word quam = *than* being put before it—

Tullus Hostilius ferocior etiam quam Romulus fuit, *Tullus Hostilius was even more high-spirited than Romulus.*

Romulus multitudini gratior fuit quam patribus, *Romulus was more popular with the commonalty than with the patricians.*

Facilius est pauperi contemptum effugere, quam diviti invidiam, *It is easier for a poor man to escape contempt, than for a rich man (to escape) envy.*

NOTE.—Magis quam or plus quam = *more than*—

Oculis magis quam auribus credimus, *We trust more to the eyes than to the ears.*

Saepe virtus plus proficit ad misericordiam quam humilitas, *Courage is often more effectual than self-abasement to excite pity.*



## NUMERALS.

126. Numerals are Adjectives and Adverbs used in expressing numbers. They are divided into four classes :—

- I. Cardinal, answering the question *How many?* as Quatuor, *four*.
- II. Ordinal, answering the question *In what order?* as Quartus, *the fourth*.
- III. Distributive, answering the question *How many of each?* as Quaterni, *four of each*.
- IV. Adverbial, answering the question *How often?* as Quater, *four times*.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
1. ūnus, a, um	primus, a, um.	singŭli, ae, a	sēmēl.
2. duō, ae, o	sēcundus or alter	bini	bis.
3. trēs, es, ia	tertius	terni or trīni	tēr.
4. quattuor	quartus	quāterni	quātēr.
5. quinque	quintus	quini	quinq̄uiens.
6. sex	sextus	sēni	sexiens.
7. septem	septīmus	septēni	septiens.
8. octō	octāvus	octōni	octiens.
9. nōvem	nōnus	nōvēni	nōviens.
10. dēcem	dēcīmus	dēni	dēcīens.
11. undēcī	undēcīmus	undēni	undēcīens.
12. duodēcī	duodēcīmus	duodēni	duodēcīens.
13. trēdēcī	tertius decimus	terni deni	terdēcīens.
14. quattuordēcī	quartus decimus	quāterni deni	quattuordēcīens.
15. quīndēcī	quintus decimus	quini deni	quīndēcīens.
16. sēdēcī	sextus decimus	sēni dēni	sēdēcīens.
17. septemdēcī	septīmus decimus	septēni deni	septīensdēcīens.
18. duodēviginti	duodēvicensimus	duodevīcēni	duodevīciens.
19. undēviginti	undēvicensimus	undevīcēni	undēvīciens.
20. vīginti	vicensimus	vīcēni	vīciens.
21. unus et vīginti	unus et vicensimus	viceni singuli	semel et vīciens.
22. duo et vīginti	alter et vicensimus	viceni bini	bis et vīciens.
23. duodetrīgintā	duodetricensimus	duodetricēni	duodetricīens.
24. undetrīgintā	undetricensimus	undetricēni	undetricīens.
25. trīgintā	tricensimus	trīcēni	trīciens.
26. quadrāgintā	quadrāgensimus	quadrāgēni	quadrāgīens.
27. quinquāgintā	quīnquagensimus	quīnquageni	quīnquagīens.
28. sexāgintā	sexagensimus	sexageni	sexagīens.
29. septuāgintā	septuagensimus	septuageni	septuagīens.
30. octōgintā	octogensimus	octogeni	octogīens.
31. nonāgintā	nonagensimus	nonageni	nonagīens.
32. undēcentum	undēcentensimus	undēcentēni	undēcentīens.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
100. centum	centessimus	centēni	centiens.
101. centum et unus	centessimus primus	centeni singuli	centiens semel.
200. dūcenti, ae, a	ducentessimus	ducēni	ducentiens.
300. trēcenti, ae, a	trēcentessimus	trēcēni	trēcentiens.
400. quadringenti, ae, a	quadringentessimus	quadringēni	quadringentiens.
500. quingenti, ae, a	quingentessimus	quingēni	quingentiens.
600. sescenti, ae, a	sescentessimus	sescēni	sescentiens.
700. septingenti, ae, a	septingentessimus	septingēni	septingentiens.
800. octingenti, ae, a	octingentessimus	octingēni	octingentiens.
900. nongenti, ae, a	nongentessimus	nongēni	nongentiens.
1000. mille	millenſimus	singula millia	milliens.

NOTE.—The forms in *-ensimus* and *-ens* are frequently written *-esimus* and *-es*, as *vicesimus* and *vicies*.

127. Unus, duo, and tres are declined thus:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> unus	una	unum	<i>Nom.</i> uni	unae	una
<i>Gen.</i> unſus			<i>Gen.</i> unorum	unarum	unorum
<i>Dat.</i> uni			<i>Dat.</i> unis		
<i>Acc.</i> unum	unam	unum	<i>Acc.</i> unos	unas	una
<i>Voc.</i> une	una	unum	<i>Voc.</i> uni	unae	una
<i>Abl.</i> uno	unā	uno	<i>Abl.</i> unis		

The plural is used with plural nouns which have a singular meaning, as *unae litterae*, *una castra*; and in the sense *alone*.

PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
<i>N. V.</i> duō	duae	duō	<i>N. Ac. V.</i> tres	tria
<i>Gen.</i> duōrum	duarum	duorum	<i>Gen.</i>	trium
<i>D. Ab.</i> duōbus	duābus	duobus	<i>D. Ab.</i>	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> duos	duas	duō		

For *duorum* the contraction *duum* is not uncommon; the accusative has *duo* for *duos* in some places. *Ambō*, *both*, is declined like *duo*.

For the accusative *tres*, we often find *tris*.

128. The Cardinals from 4 to 100 are indeclinable.

In writing such a number as 24 in Latin, we may put *quattuor et viginti*, or *viginti quattuor*.

Again, "234 years" may be rendered "ducenti anni et triginta quattuor," or "ducenti triginta quattuor anni."

Mille is indeclinable, and may be used as an adjective, as "mille homines," or with a genitive, as "mille hominum." The plural is only used as a noun, and is declined thus :—millia, millium, millibus. It is often followed by a genitive, as tria millia hominum. For millia many mss. give milia.

### FRACTIONS.

129.	<i>One-half</i>	is expressed in Latin by <i>dimidia pars</i> .
	<i>One-third</i>	..... <i>tertia pars</i> .
	<i>Two-thirds</i>	..... <i>duae partes</i> .
	<i>Three-fourths</i>	..... <i>tres partes</i> .
	<i>Three-fifths</i>	..... <i>tres quintae</i> .

### SPACE.

130. In describing measures of length, such as the length or height of a wall, and the breadth or depth of a ditch, the distance is expressed by the Genitive or Accusative, thus—

Fossa viginti pedum, }  
Fossa viginti pedes lata, } *a ditch twenty feet wide.*

Even after a comparative the accusative of distance is used—

Flumen ab castris Caesaris non amplius millia passuum  
aberat, *The river was not more than a thousand paces from  
Caesar's camp.*

Castra haud plus quinque millia passuum ab urbe locant,  
*They pitch their camp not more than five miles from the  
city.*

NOTE 1.—When a Roman army encamped for the night, a ditch (fossa) was dug round the camp (castra); on the inner side of the ditch the earth was thrown into a mound (agger), on which they put a row of palisades (vallus), and the whole work was called an entrenchment (vallum).

NOTE 2.—The thousand paces (mille passuum) of Latin

writers mean *double steps*, so that mille passuum = about 5000 English feet.

### TIME.

131. When the Latins spoke of an action going on *through the whole of a period of time*, they put the words expressing the time in the Accusative—

Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos; Numa tres et quadraginta, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years; Numa, forty-three.*

Triginta dies obsidio fuit, *The blockade lasted thirty days.*

132. The time *at which* an action is performed is put in the Ablative—

Prima luce, *At daybreak.*

Horā sextā, *At the sixth hour.*

Abhinc annis quattuor est mortuus, *He died four years ago.*

Paucis post diebus, *A few days after,* } *ante and post are*  
 Multis ante diebus, *Many days before,* } *here adverbs.*

Non ita multis ante annis, *Not very many years before.*

Quingentesimo et quadragensimo anno ab urbe condita, *In the 540th year from the foundation of the city.*

Sexcentesimo et altero anno post urbem conditam, *In the 602d year after the foundation of the city.*

So also the ablatives hieme, aestate, die, nocte.

133. In describing the age of a person the genitive is used—

Puer annorum fere novem, *A boy about nine years old;*

or the accusative with natus, *born—*

Annos sexaginta natus es, aut plus eo, ut conicio, *You are sixty years old or more, I guess.—TER.*

134. The time *in which* a work is done is expressed by the ablative—

Quod Helvetii diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, id

Caesar uno die fecit, *Caesar finished in a single day the work which the Helvetii had with the greatest difficulty completed in twenty days.*

### 135. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

hōdie, <i>to-day.</i>	mānē, <i>in the morning.</i>
crās, <i>to-morrow.</i>	vespēri, <i>in the evening.</i>
hēri, <i>yesterday.</i>	postēro die, <i>on the following day.</i>
pridie, <i>the day before.</i>	postridie, <i>the day after.</i>
quōtidie, <i>daily.</i>	in dies, <i>day by day.</i>
singūlis mensibus, <i>monthly.</i>	quōtannis, <i>yearly.</i>
noctū, <i>by night.</i>	interdiū, <i>in the daytime.</i>

Mane haec scripsi, *I wrote this in the morning.*

Heri vesperi apud me Hirtius fuit, *Hirtius was at my house last evening.*

Qui non est hodie, cras minus aptus erit, *He who is not fit (for the work) to-day will be less fit to-morrow.*—OV.

Postero die Helvetii castra ex eo loco movent, *The Helvetii march away from that position on the following day.*

Postridie ejus diei Caesar Rhenum transire constituit, *Caesar determines to cross the Rhine on the following day.*

Pridie quam has litteras dedi, *The day before I wrote this letter.*

Quotidie magis id perspicio, *I see that more clearly every day.*

NOTE 1.—To express *every day* literally, the Latins used *in singulos dies*; thus Cicero writes—

Quotidie, vel potius in singulos dies, breviores litteras ad te mitto.

NOTE 2.—Quotidie is often, and more correctly, written Cotidie.

### TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS.

136. 1. Dum in the sense of *while*, and donec in the sense of *as long as*, usually take the Indicative—

Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, dum Lycurgi leges vigeabant, *The Spartans were brave, while the laws of Lycurgus were unimpaired.*

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, *So long as you are prosperous you will reckon many friends.*—Ov.

2. Dum and donec, in the sense of *until*, in reference to an action not yet completed, take the Subjunctive—

Expectabo dum mihi litterae tuae veniant, *I will wait till your letter reaches me.*

Rusticus expectat dum defluat amnis, *The countryman waits till the river shall run dry.*—HOR.

Te expectabo donec ad hunc locum venias, *I will await your arrival at this place.*

3. Dum, *while*, is often found with the Imperfect Present even when *past* events are referred to—

Dum ea ibi Romani gerunt, Antemnatium exercitus in fines Romanos incursionem fecit, *While the Romans were thus engaged in that quarter, an army of the Antemnates made a raid on the Roman border-land.*

4. Ut, *when*, is often used with the past tenses of the Indicative—

Ut primum a tuo discessu Romam veni, *On my first visit to Rome after your departure.*

Ut primum in illud oppidum venit, *On his first arrival in that town.*

5. Cum (often, but incorrectly, written quum), *when*, is often used with the past tenses of the Subjunctive—

Cum legati venissent, sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt, *When the envoys arrived they all flung themselves weeping at the feet of Caesar.*

Cum Alexandriae essem fuit Antiochus mecum, *When I was staying at Alexandria, Antiochus was with me.*

6. Cum, *since*, introducing a reason for or against a statement, is followed by a Subjunctive—

Quae cum ita sint, *And since this is the case.*

Cum vita sine amicis metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare, *Seeing that life without friends is full of alarm, reason itself warns us to provide ourselves with friendships.*

In this sense cum is rather *causal* than *temporal*, and when it merely marks the time of an action without giving any notion of cause, it takes the Indicative—

Cum haec scribebam, *When I was writing this letter.*

7. Antequam and priusquam, *before*, take the Indicative when they merely mark a connexion in reference to time.

Antequam tuas litteras legi, in hominem ire cupiebam, *Before I read your letter I was anxious to visit the man.*

Priusquam de ceteris rebus respondeo, de amicitia pauca dicam, *Before I reply on the other points, I will say a few words on the subject of friendship.*

But if one occurrence is conceived by the writer as depending in any way on the other, or as uncertain, the Subjunctive is used—

Antequam venias ad campum, intrandae sunt angustiae, *Before you can reach the plain you must pass through a defile.*

Priusquam incipias, consule, *Before you begin, deliberate.*

8. Postquam, *after that*, usually takes the Indicative, because it naturally introduces a statement of fact—

Undecimo die postquam a te discesseram, *On the eleventh day after I left you.*

Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides poposcit, *When Caesar arrived at that place he demanded hostages.*

NOTE.—Bear in mind that the Indicative is the mood of *Fact*, and the Subjunctive is the mood of *Conception*.

## PRICE AND VALUE.

137. The price and value of things is usually expressed by the genitive, as—

*Parvi, of little value; minoris, for less price.*

*Te semper maximi feci, I have always held you in the highest esteem.*

*Quanti hoc emisti? How much did this cost you?*

*Frumentum multo minoris vendidit quam tu, He sold corn at a far lower price than you did.*

Sometimes by the ablative, as of the instrument, especially of definite value—

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*

*Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea Poenis victoria stetit, That victory cost the Carthaginians much life-blood and (many) wounds.*

## THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

138. The names of the months were Ianuarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Iunius, Iulius, Augustus, September, October, November, December.

These names are adjectives, *mensis* being understood with each.

March was the first month in the year. July was so called in honour of Julius Caesar, and August in honour of Augustus Caesar; the names of these months having previously been Quintilis and Sextilis.

139. The first day of each month was called *Kalendae*, “the Kalends;” thus the 1st of March was called *Kalendae Martiae*, and on the 1st of March was in Latin *Kalendis Martiis*.

The 7th of March was called *Nonae Martiae*, *The Nones of March*. The 15th of March was called *Idus Martiae*, *The Ides of March*.



In March, July, October, May,  
The Nones were on the seventh day,  
and the Ides on the fifteenth day.

In the other eight months the Nones were on the 5th, and the Ides on the 13th.

Hence—

Nonis Decembribus = *on the 5th of December,*

And—

Idibus Iuniis = *on the 13th of June.*

140. If we take the month of May as an example, the days were named on the following system :—

The 31st of May was called "the day before the Kalends of June."

The 30th of May..... "the third day before the Kalends of June."

The 29th of May..... "the fourth day before the Kalends of June."

.....  
The 16th of May..... "the seventeenth day before the Kalends of June."

The 15th of May..... "the Ides of May."

The 14th of May..... "the day before the Ides of May."

The 13th of May..... "the third day before the Ides of May."

.....  
The 8th of May..... "the eighth day before the Ides of May."

The 7th of May..... "the Nones of May."

The 6th of May..... "the day before the Nones of May."

The 5th of May..... "the third day before the Nones of May."

.....  
The 2d of May..... "the sixth day before the Nones of May."

The 1st of May..... "the Kalends of May."

141. Thus the days of each month were reckoned *backwards* from the Nones and Ides of the month, and from the Kalends of the next month.

In the reckoning, the day *from which* and also the day *to which* the reckoning was made were included.

Thus—

*On March 3d was "quinto ante Nonas Martias."*

*On January 8th was "sexto ante Idus Januarias."*

*On October 23d was "decimo ante Kalendas Novembres."*

142. The number of days in the Roman months was the same as in ours, but though February had one day more in leap-year, it was not added at the end of the month, but the 24th of February was reckoned twice over. Now February 24 was the *sixth* day before the Kalends of March, and hence this day in leap-year was called *Bissextus*, whence the word *Bissextile* for leap-year.

143. In writing dates the Romans used abbreviated forms. Thus they wrote—

Quinto Nonas Martias, or V. Non. Mar.

Cicero and Livy have a peculiar form—

a. d. V. Non. Mar., which stands for ante diem quintum Nonas Martias.

Also, an expression of this kind can be made the object of a preposition, thus—

Comitia in ante diem quartum Nonas Sextiles edixit, *He proclaimed the election for the 2d of August.*

NOTE.—The Romans divided the day between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, called *Horae*. Hence the length of the Roman *hour* varied with the time of the year. When day and night were of equal length, *hora prima* corresponded to our 7 A.M., or to any time between 6 and 7 A.M. *Hora sexta* was the hour of noon all the year round.

# PART III.

## VERBS.

### 144. Conjugation of the Verb, **Sum**, I am.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	sum	ēs	est.
			sūmus	estis	sunt.
		<i>Past.</i>	eram	erās	erat.
			erāmus	erātis	erant.
		<i>Future.</i>	ero	eris	erit.
			erimus	eritis	erunt.
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	ful	fuisti	fuit.
			fulmus	fuistis	fuērunt (-ēre).
		<i>Past.</i>	fuēram	fueras	fuerat.
			fuerāmus	fuerātis	fuerant.
		<i>Future.</i>	fuēro	fueris	fuerit.
			fuerimus	fueritis	fuerint.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	sīm	sis	sīt.
			sīmus	sitis	sint.
		<i>Past.</i>	essem	essēs	essēt.
			essēmus	essētis	essent.
		<i>or,</i>	fōrem	fōrēs	fōrēt.
			fōrēmūs	fōrētis	fōrent.
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	fuērīm	fuērīs	fuerīt.
			fuerīmus	fuerītis	fuerint.
		<i>Past.</i>	fuissem	fuissēs	fuisset.
			fuissemus	fuissētis	fuisissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SING. 2 Pers.	es, estō.	PLUR. 2 Pers.	estē, estōtē.
3 Pers.	estō.	3 Pers.	suntō.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, esse. Past, fuisse. Future, fōrē, or futurus esse.*

## PARTICIPLE:

*Future, fütürus.*

145. Like *Sum*, are conjugated the compounds—

<i>Absum, be absent.</i>	<i>Obsum, be obstructive.</i>
<i>Adsum, be present.</i>	<i>Praesum, preside over.</i>
<i>Dēsum, be wanting.</i>	<i>Prōsum, be helpful.</i>
<i>Insum, be in or upon.</i>	<i>Subsum, underlie.</i>
<i>Intersum, be between.</i>	<i>Sūpersum, survive.</i>

Of these only *Absum* and *Praesum* have a present participle—

*Absens, absentis, etc.*, and *Praesens, praesentis, etc.*

*Prosum* has in its conjugation *d* before the vowel *e*; as—

*Prōsum, prodēs, prodest; prosūmus, prodestis, prosunt.*

The most important of the compounds of *Sum* is *Possum*, *I am able*, which is compounded of the adjective *Pōtis, potē, able*, and *Sum*.

146. Conjugation of *Possum, I am able.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	possum	pōtēs	pōtest.
		possūmus	pōtestis	possunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	pōtēram	poteras	poterat.
		poterāmus	poterātis	poterant.
PERFECT.	<i>Future.</i>	pōtēro	potēris	potērit.
		potērīmus	potērītis	potērunt.
	<i>Present.</i>	potuī	potuisti	potuit.
		potuīmus	potuistis	potuerunt (-ēre).
	<i>Past.</i>	potuēram	potueras	potuerat.
		potuerāmus	potuerātis	potuerant.
	<i>Future.</i>	potuēro	potueris	potuerit.
		potuerīmus	potuerītis	potuerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	possim	possis	possit.
		possimus	possitis	possint.
	<i>Past.</i>	possem	posses	posset.
		possēmus	possētis	possent.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	potuērim	potueris	potuerit.
		potuerimus	potueritis	potuerint.
	<i>Past.</i>	potuissem	potuisses	potuisset.
		potuissēmus	potuissētis	potuissent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, possē. Past, potuisse.*

It has no Imperative and no Participle, *pōtens* being only used as an adjective in the sense of *powerful*.

NOTE.—*Possum* is followed by the Infinitive—

*Facere non possum ut nihil ad te dem litterarum, I cannot refrain from writing to you.*

And sometimes by an Accusative—

*Non omnia possumus omnes, We have not all power to do all things.—VIRG.*

For other Examples of this verb see § 175.

147. *Sum* is followed by a Genitive or Ablative to describe mental or bodily characteristics—

*Papirius Cursor invicti ad laborem corporis fuit, Papirius Cursor had a frame that could not be overcome by fatigue.*

*Iugurtha erat impigro atque acri ingenio, Jugurtha was a man of active and enterprising character.*

*Lucius Catilina fuit magna vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque.*

NOTE 1.—You cannot render *a man of talent* by *vir ingenii*, but an adjective must qualify the genitive; as—

*Vir summi ingenii.*

NOTE 2.—For such expressions as *The brave Achilles, The great Alexander*, we find in Latin—*Achilles, vir fortissimus*, and *magnus ille Alexander*.

148. A genitive is used with *Sum* where we should make the genitive depend on words like *duty, part, mark*—

*Est angusti animi amare divitias, Love of riches is the mark of a narrow mind.*

*Summi oratoris est scribere historiam, A good historian must be a first-rate orator.*

149. *Sum* is often followed by two datives, one expressing the person affected, and the other expressing the way in which he is affected—

*Erit illi illa res honori, That matter will be an honour to that man.*

*Hoc aliis erat exitio, This was destruction to others.*

150. *Est, sunt*, and other parts of *Sum* take a dative of the person possessing something—

*Est mihi pater, I have a father.*

*Sunt mihi bis septem praestanti corpore nymphae.*—VIRG.

*Mihi cum Pompeio et vetus et magna amicitia est.*

151. The prepositional compounds of *Sum* are often followed by a dative—

*Ego tibi neque desum neque deero.*

*Tibi nullum a me amoris officium defuit.*

*Omnibus negotiis non interfuit solum, sed etiam praefuit.*

*Filius superfuit patri, bonorum omnium heres.*

*Tua disciplina nec mihi prodest nec tibi.*—PLAUT.

*Vide ne tibi desis.*

*Id, quod tibi prodest, obest mihi.*

*Omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem.*

152. Active Voice.—*Amo, I love.*—First Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Present.	amo	amas	amat.
		amamus	amatis	amant.
	Past.	amabam	amabas	amabat.
		amabamus	amabatis	amabant.
	Future.	amabo	amabis	amabit.
PERFECT.	Present.	amavi	amavisti	amavit.
		amavimus	amavistis	amaverunt (or -ere).
	Past.	amaveram	amaveras	amaverat.
		amaveramus	amaveratis	amaverant.
	Future.	amavero	amaveris	amaverit.
		amaverimus	amaveritis	amaverint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Present.	amem	ames	amet.
		amemus	ametis	ament.
	Past.	amarem	amares	amaret.
		amaremus	amaretis	amarent.
PERFECT.	Present.	amaverim	amaveris	amaverit.
		amaverimus	amaveritis	amaverint.
	Past.	amavissem	amavisses	amavisset.
		amavissemus	amavissetis	amavissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. ama or amato ; 3. amato.      P. 2. amate or amatote ; 3. amanto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, amare. Past, amavisse. Future, amaturus esse.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present, amans. Future, amaturus.*

GERUNDS—amandi, amando, amandum.

SUPINES—amatum, amatu.

NOTE.—In the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* are often omitted before *s* and *r*, thus—amasti, amassem, amasse.

153. *Active Voice.*—**Moneo**, *I advise.*—*Second Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	moneo	mones	monet.
		monemus	monetis	monent.
	<i>Past.</i>	monebam	monebas	monebat.
		monebamus	monebatis	monebant.
	<i>Future.</i>	monebo	monebis	monebit.
		monebimus	monebitis	monebunt.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	monui	monuisti	monuit.
		monuimus	monuistis	monuerunt (or -ere).
	<i>Past.</i>	monueram	monueras	monuerat.
		monueramus	monueratis	monuerant.
	<i>Future.</i>	monuero	monueris	monuerit.
		monuerimus	monueritis	monuerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	moneam	moneas	moneat.
		moneamus	moneatis	moneant.
	<i>Past.</i>	monerem	moneres	moneret.
		moneremus	moneretis	monerent.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	monuerim	monueris	monuerit.
		monuerimus	monueritis	monuerint.
	<i>Past.</i>	monuissem	monuissetis	monuisset.
		monuissemus	monuissetis	monuissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. mone or moneto ; 3. moneto.

P. 2. monete or monetote ; 3. monento.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, monere.      *Past*, monuisse.      *Future*, moniturus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, monens.      *Future*, moniturus.

GERUNDS—monendi, monendo, monendum.

SUPINES—monitum, monitu.



154. Active Voice.—**Rego, I rule.**—*Third Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	rego	regis	regit.
			regimus	regitis	regunt.
		<i>Past.</i>	regebam	regebas	regebat.
	{		regebamus	regebatis	regebant.
		<i>Future.</i>	regam	reges	reget.
			regemus	regetis	regent.
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	rexī	rexistī	rexit.
			reximus	rexistis	rexerunt (or -ērē).
		<i>Past.</i>	rexeram	rexeras	rexerat.
	{		rexeramus	rexeratis	rexerant.
		<i>Future.</i>	rexero	rexeris	rexerit.
			rexerimus	rexeritis	rexerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	regam	regas	regat.
			regamus	regatis	regant.
	{	<i>Past.</i>	regerem	regeres	regeret.
			regeremus	regeretis	regerent.
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	rexerim	rexeris	rexerit.
			rexerimus	rexeritis	rexerint.
	{	<i>Past.</i>	rexissem	rexisses	rexisset.
			rexissemus	rexissetis	rexissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. rege or regito ; 3. regito.      P. 2. regite or regitote ; 3. regunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, regere.      *Past*, rexisse.      *Future*, recturus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, regens.      *Future*, recturus.

GERUNDS—regendi, regendo, regendum.

SUPINES—rectum, rectu.

155. *Active Voice.—Audio, I hear.—Fourth Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	audio	audis	audit.
		audimus	auditis	audiunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	audiebam	audiebas	audiebat.
IMPERFECT.		audiebamus	audiebatis	audiebant.
	<i>Future.</i>	audiam	audies	audiet.
		audiemus	audietis	audient.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	audivi	audivisti	audivit.
		audivimus	audivistis	audiverunt (or -ērē).
	<i>Past.</i>	audiveram	audiveras	audiverat.
PERFECT.		audiveramus	audiveratis	audiverant.
	<i>Future.</i>	audivero	audiveris	audiverit.
		audiverimus	audiveritis	audiverint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	audiam	audias	audiat.
		audiamus	audiatis	audiant.
	<i>Past.</i>	audirem	audires	audiret.
IMPERFECT.		audiremus	audiretis	audirent.
	<i>Present.</i>	audiverim	audiveris	audiverit.
		audiverimus	audiveritis	audiverint.
PERFECT.	<i>Past.</i>	audivissem	audivisses	audivisset.
		audivissemus	audivissetis	audivissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. audi or audito ; 3. audito. P. 2. audite or auditote ; 3. audiunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, audire. *Future*, auditurus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, audiens. *Future*, auditurus.

GERUNDS—audiendi, audiendo, audiendum.

SUPINES—auditum, auditu.

NOTE.—In the Perfect Tenses *v* is often omitted before *e* and *i*, thus —audiistis or audistis, audiit, audierunt, audiisse.

156. Some verbs in *-io* are conjugated partly like *rego* and partly like *audio*; thus:—

**Capio, I take.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	<i>cāpio</i>	<i>capīs</i>	<i>capit.</i>
			<i>capimus</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>capiunt.</i>
	{	<i>Past.</i>	<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebas</i>	<i>capiebat.</i>
			<i>capiebamus</i>	<i>capiebatis</i>	<i>capiebant.</i>
	{	<i>Future.</i>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>capies</i>	<i>capiet.</i>
			<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>capias</i>	<i>capiat.</i>
			<i>capiamus</i>	<i>capiatīs</i>	<i>capiant.</i>
	{	<i>Past.</i>	<i>capērem</i>	<i>caperes</i>	<i>caperet.</i>
			<i>caperemus</i>	<i>caperetis</i>	<i>caperent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. *capē* or *capīto*; 3. *capīto*. P. 2. *capīte* or *capitote*; 3. *capiunto*.

INFIN. *Pres.*—*capere*.

PART. *Pres.*—*capiens*.

GERUND—*capienti*, etc.

Similarly are conjugated—

<i>cūpio, desire,</i>	<i>iācio, throw,</i>
<i>fācio, make,</i>	<i>pārio, bring forth,</i>
<i>fōdio, dig,</i>	<i>quātio, shake,</i>
<i>fūgio, flee,</i>	<i>rāpio, seize,</i>

and the other verbs set down in the list of Verbs under Stem *I* in Conjug. 3, § 185.

*N.B.*—That *-i* is dropped before *-er* and *-e* final.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

157. The Passive Voice of a Verb of Action is used when the object of the action is made the subject of the sentence.

Thus a simple sentence of the form

*Deus mundum gubernat*

may be thrown into another shape by putting the verb in the passive, and changing the object of the action into the subject of the sentence, thus—

*Mundus a Deo gubernatur.*

NOTE.—When the agent is a *person*, we must use *a* or *ab*.

Thus though we may write

*Pinus agitur ventis, The pine is tossed by the winds,*  
we must write *Pueri a magistro docentur.*

In *transitive* verbs Passive inflexions are used, corresponding to each inflexion of the Imperfect Tenses of the Indicative, thus—

Conjugation 1.

*Present, amōr, I am being loved.*  
*Past, amābār, I was being loved.*  
*Future, amābōr, I shall be loved.*

Conjugation 2.

*mōneōr, I am being advised.*  
*mōnēbār, I was being advised.*  
*mōnēbōr, I shall be advised.*

Conjugation 3.

*Present, rēgōr, I am being ruled.*  
*Past, rēgēbār, I was being ruled.*  
*Future, rēgār, I shall be ruled.*

Conjugation 4.

*audiōr, I am being heard.*  
*audiēbār, I was being heard.*  
*audiār, I shall be heard.*

The Perfect Tenses are formed by putting the Past Participle, in the proper number and gender, with certain tenses of the verb *Sum*: thus the Past Participle of *amo* being *amātus*, the Perfect tenses of the Indicative Passive for that verb are, in the first person masculine—

*Present, amatus sum, I was loved, or I have been loved.*  
*Past, amatus eram, I had been loved.*  
*Future, amatus ero, I shall have been loved.*

The Perfect tenses of the Subjunctive are formed in a similar way, the Subjunctive tenses of *sum* being used thus—

*Present, amatus sim. Past, amatus essem.*

NOTE 1.—For *sum* we may use *fui*; for *eram*, *fuera*m; for *ero*, *fuero*; for *sim*, *fuera*im; for *essem*, *fuisse*m.

NOTE 2.—The auxiliary *sum* is often put before the Participle, or even separated from it by one or more words, thus—

*Hannibal est revocatus, Hannibal was recalled.*

*Hoc est nobis a maioribus traditum, This has been handed down to us from our ancestors.*

NOTE 3.—Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the Passive, thus *Curritur a me*=*I run*, and *Pugnatum est a nobis*=*We fought*.

158. *Passive Voice.*—**Amor**, *I am loved.*—*First Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## IMPERFECT-PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
ămôr.	amămur.
amăris (or -rē).	amămîni.
amătur.	amantur.

## PERFECT-PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
amătus sum.	amati sumus.
amatus es.	amati estis.
amatus est.	amati sunt.

## IMPERFECT-PAST.

amăbăr.	amabămur.
amabăris (or -re).	amabămîni.
amabatur.	amabantur.

## PERFECT-PAST.

amatus eram.	amati eramus.
amatus eras.	amati eratis.
amatus erat.	amati erant.

## IMPERFECT-FUTURE.

amăbôr.	amabîmur.
amabêris (or -re).	amabîmîni.
amabîtur.	amabuntur.

## PERFECT-FUTURE.

amatus ero.	amati erimus.
amatus eris.	amati eritis.
amatus erit.	amati erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## IMPERFECT-PRESENT.

amêr.	amêmur.
amêris (or -re).	amêmîni.
amêtur.	amentur.

## PERFECT-PRESENT.

amatus sim.	amati simus.
amatus sis.	amati sitis.
amatus sit.	amati sint.

## IMPERFECT-PAST.

amărêr.	amarêmur.
amarêris (or -re).	amarêmîni.
amarêtur.	amarentur.

## PERFECT-PAST.

amatus essem.	amati essemus.
amatus esses.	amati essetis.
amatus esset.	amati essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- S. 2. amărê or amătôr, *be thou loved.*  
 3. amator, *let him be loved.*  
 P. 2. amămîni, *be ye loved.*  
 3. amantor, *let them be loved.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, amări, *to be loved.*

*Past*, amatus esse (or fuisse), *to have been loved.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE—amatus, *loved.*

GERUNDIVE—amandus, *meet to be loved.*

159. *Passive Voice.*—**Monēor**, *I am advised.*—*Second Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.		PERFECT-PRESENT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
monēōr.	monēmur.	monitus sum.	moniti sumus.
monēris (or -rē).	monēmīni.	monitus es.	moniti estis.
monētur.	monentur.	monitus est.	moniti sunt.
IMPERFECT-PAST.		PERFECT-PAST.	
monēbār.	monēbāmur.	monitus eram.	moniti eramus.
monēbāris (or -re).	monēbāmīni.	monitus eras.	moniti eratis.
monēbātur.	monēbantur.	monitus erat.	moniti erant.
IMPERFECT-FUTURE.		PERFECT-FUTURE.	
monēbōr.	monēbīmur.	monitus ero.	moniti erimus.
monēbēris (or -re).	monēbīmīni.	monitus eris.	moniti eritis.
monēbitur.	monēbuntur.	monitus erit.	moniti erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.		PERFECT-PRESENT.	
monēār.	monēāmur.	monitus sim.	moniti simus.
monēāris (or -re).	monēāmīni.	monitus sis.	moniti sitis.
monēātur.	monēantur.	monitus sit.	moniti sint.
IMPERFECT-PAST.		PERFECT-PAST.	
monērār.	monērāmur.	monitūs essem.	moniti essemus.
monērāris (or -re).	monērāmīni.	monitus esses.	moniti essetis.
monērētur.	monērēntur.	monitus esset.	moniti essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- S. 2. monēre or monētor, *be thou advised.*  
 3. monetor, *let him be advised.*  
 P. 2. monēmīni, *be ye advised.*  
 3. monentor, *let them be advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, monēri, *to be advised.*  
*Past*, monitus esse (or fuisse), *to have been advised.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE—monitus, *advised.*

GERUNDIVE—monendus, *meet to be advised.*

160. *Passive Voice.*—*Regor, I am ruled.*—*Third Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## IMPERFECT-PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
rēgōr.	rēgimur.
rēgēris (or -rē).	rēgimīni.
rēgītur.	rēguntur.

## PERFECT-PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
rectus sum.	recti sumus.
rectus es.	recti estis.
rectus est.	recti sunt.

## IMPERFECT-PAST.

rēgēbār.	rēgēbāmur.
rēgēbāris (or -re).	rēgebamini.
rēgēbātur.	rēgebantur.

## PERFECT-PAST.

rectus eram.	recti eramus.
rectus eras.	recti eratis.
rectus erat.	recti erant.

## IMPERFECT-FUTURE.

rēgār.	rēgēmur.
rēgēris (or -re).	rēgēmini.
rēgētur.	regentur.

## PERFECT-FUTURE.

rectus ero.	recti erimus.
rectus eris.	recti eritis.
rectus erit.	recti erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## IMPERFECT-PRESENT.

rēgār.	rēgāmur.
rēgāris (or -re).	rēgāmini.
rēgātur.	regantur.

## PERFECT-PRESENT.

rectus sim.	recti simus.
rectus sis.	recti estis.
rectus sit.	recti sint.

## IMPERFECT-PAST.

rēgērēr.	regerēmur.
regerēris (or -re).	regerēmīni.
regerētur.	regerentur.

## PERFECT-PAST.

rectus essem.	recti essemus.
rectus esses.	recti essetis.
rectus esset.	recti essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- S. 2. rēgērē or regitor, *be thou ruled.*  
 3. regitor, *let him be ruled.*  
 P. 2. rēgimīni, *be ye ruled.*  
 3. reguntor, *let them be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, rēgi, to be ruled.*

*Past, rectus esse (or fuisse), to have been ruled.*

PAST-PARTICIPLE—rectus, *ruled.*

GERUNDIVE—regendus, *meet to be ruled.*

161. *Passive Voice.—Audior, I am heard.—Fourth Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.		PERFECT-PRESENT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
audiōr.	audimur.	auditus sum.	auditi sumus.
audiris (or -rē).	audimīni.	auditus es.	auditi estis.
audītur.	audiuntur.	auditus est.	auditi sunt.
IMPERFECT-PAST.		PERFECT-PAST.	
audiebār.	audiebāmur.	auditus eram.	auditi eramus.
audiebāris (or -re).	audiebāmīni.	auditus eras.	auditi eratis.
audiebatur.	audiebantur.	auditus erat.	auditi erant.
IMPERFECT-FUTURE.		PERFECT-FUTURE.	
audiār.	audiēmur.	auditus ero.	auditi erimus.
audiēris (or -re).	audiēmīni.	auditus eris.	auditi eritis.
audiētur.	audientur.	auditus erit.	auditi erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT-PRESENT.		PERFECT-PRESENT.	
audiār.	audiāmur.	auditus sim.	auditi simus.
audiāris (or -re).	audiāmīni.	auditus sis.	auditi sitis.
audiātur.	audiantur.	auditus sit.	auditi sint.
IMPERFECT-PAST.		PERFECT-PAST.	
audirēr.	audirēmur.	auditus essem.	auditi essemus.
audirērīs (or -re).	audirēmīni.	auditus esses.	auditi essetis.
audirētur.	audirentur.	auditus esset.	auditi essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- SING. 2. audirē or auditor, *be thou heard.*  
 3. auditor, *let him be heard.*  
 PLUR. 2. audimīni, *be ye heard.*  
 3. audiuntor, *let them be heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

- Present, audiri, to be heard.*  
*Past, auditus esse (or fuisse), to have been heard.*  
 PAST-PARTICIPLE—auditus, *heard.*  
 GERUNDIVE—audiendus, *meet to be heard.*



*EXAMPLES OF USAGE OF PASSIVE VERBS.*

162. Res verbis significantur. Roma, desereris.  
 Aestus lunae motibus gubernantur.  
 Propter virtutem iure laudamur.  
 Amici nostri magno timore de nobis afficiuntur.  
 Corpora iuvenum labore firmantur.  
 Ipsi in hostium loco numeroque ducemini.  
 Mari supero inferoque Italia insulae modo cingitur.  
 Ut Romae consules, sic Carthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur.  
 Vera laus uni virtuti debetur.  
 Caesaris muneribus multitudo imperita leniebatur.  
 Lycurgi temporibus traditur fuisse Homerus.  
 Sapientia omnes res humanae geruntur.  
 Frigidus in pratis cantando rumpitur anguis.—VIRG.  
 Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectantur ut ipsae.—OV.  
 Milo magis de reipublicae salute quam de sua perturbatur.  
 Armatos vere appellamus, qui scutis telisque parati ornatique sunt.  
 Hannibal ad defendendam patriam ex Italia in Africam est revocatus.  
 Non semper viator a latrone, nonnunquam etiam latro a viatore occiditur.

*DEPONENT VERBS.*

163. Many Verbs in Latin have a Passive form with an Active meaning, sometimes transitive, as *hortor*, *I exhort*; sometimes intransitive, as *morior*, *I am dying*.

They are called Deponents because they *lay aside*, as it were, the Active form.

Such verbs are conjugated, according to the conjugations to which they belong, for the most part like the Passives *amor*, *moneor*, *regor*, *audior*.

164. *Deponent Verbs.*—**Hortor**, *I exhort.*—*First Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	hortor	hortāris	hortātur.	
		hortāmur	hortāmini	hortantur.	
	<i>Past.</i>	hortābar	hortābāris	hortabātur.	
		hortabāmur	hortabāmini	hortabantur.	
	<i>Future.</i>	hortābor	hortābēris	hortābitur.	
	hortābimur	hortābimini	hortabuntur.		
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	hortātus	sum	es	est.
		hortati	sumus	estis	sunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	hortatus	eram	eras	erat.
		hortati	eramus	eratis	erant.
	<i>Future.</i>	hortatus	ero	eris	erit.
	hortati	erimus	eritis	erunt.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	hortēr	hortēris	hortētur.	
		hortēmur	hortēmini	hortentur.	
	<i>Past.</i>	hortārer	hortarēris	hortarētur.	
		hortarēmur	hortarēmini	hortarentur.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	hortatus	sim	sis	sit.
		hortati	simus	sitis	sint.
	<i>Past.</i>	hortatus	essem	esses	esset.
		hortati	essemus	essetis	essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SING. 2. hortāre or hortātor.	PLUR. 2. hortāmini.
3. hortator.	3. hortantor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, hortāri.    *Past*, hortātus esse.    *Future*, hortāturus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, hortans.    *Past*, hortātus.    *Future*, hortaturus.  
*Ger.*, hortandus.

GERUNDS—hortandi, hortando, hortandum.

SUPINES—hortatum, hortatu.

165. *Deponent Verbs.*—**Vereor, I fear.**—*Second Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	vĕreor.	vĕrĕris	vĕrĕtur.	
		vĕrĕmur.	vĕrĕmini	verentur.	
	<i>Past.</i>	vĕrĕbar	vĕrebĕris	vĕrebĕtur.	
		vĕrebĕmur	vĕrebĕmini	vĕrebantur.	
	<i>Future.</i>	vĕrĕbor	vĕrebĕris	vĕrebĕtur.	
		vĕrebĕmur	vĕrebĕmini	vĕrebantur.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	vĕrĭtus	sum	es	est.
		veriti	sumus	estis	sunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	veritus	eram	eras	erat.
		veriti	eramus.	eratis	erant.
	<i>Future.</i>	veritus	ero	eris	erit.
		veriti	erimus	eritis	erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	verear	vereāris	vereatur.	
		vereāmur	vereamini	vereantur.	
	<i>Past.</i>	verērer	vererēris	vererētur.	
		vererēmur	vereremini	vererentur.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	veritus	sim	sis	sit.
		veriti	simus	sitis	sint.
	<i>Past.</i>	veritus	essem	esses	esset.
		veriti	essemus	essetis	essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. verēre or verētor ; 3. verētor.      P. 2. veremini ; 3. verentor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present,* verēri.    *Past,* verītus esse.    *Future,* veriturus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present,* verēns.    *Past,* verītus.    *Future,* veritūrus.    *Ger.,* verendus.

GERUNDS—verendi, verendo, verendum.

SUPINES—verītum, veritū.

166. *Deponent Verbs.—Utor, I use.—Third Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	ūtōr	utēris	utūtūr.	
		utīmūr	utīmīni	utuntūr.	
	<i>Past.</i>	utēbār	utebāris	utebātūr.	
		utebāmūr	utebāmīni	utebantūr.	
	<i>Future.</i>	utar	utēris	utētūr.	
		utēmūr	utēmīni	utentūr.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	ūsus	sum	es	est.
		usi	sumus	estis	sunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	usus	eram	eras	erat.
		usi	eramus	eratis	erant.
	<i>Future.</i>	usus	ero	eris	erit.
		usi	erimus	eritis	erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	utar	utāris	utātur.	
		utāmur	utamini	utantur.	
	<i>Past.</i>	utērer	uterēris	uterētur.	
		uterēmur	uterēmini	uterentur.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	usus	sim	sis	sit.
		usi	simus	sitis	sint.
	<i>Past.</i>	usus	essem	esses	esset.
		usi	essemus	essetis	essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. utēre or utitor ; 3. utitor. P. 2. utimini ; 3. utuntor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, ūtī. *Past*, usus esse. *Future*, usūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, ūtens. *Past*, ūsus. *Future*, usūrus. *Ger.*, utendus.

GERUNDS—utendi, utendo, utendum.

SUPINES—usum, usu.

167. *Deponent Verbs.*—**Partior, I divide.**—*Fourth Conjugation.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	partior	partiris	partitur.	
			partimur	partimini	partiuntur.	
		<i>Past.</i>	partiebar	partiebāris	partiebātur.	
			partiebāmur	partiebāmini	partiebantur.	
		<i>Future.</i>	partiar	partiēris	partiētur.	
		partiēmur	partiēmini	partientur.		
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	partitus	sum	es	est
			partiti	sumus	estis	sunt.
		<i>Past.</i>	partitus	eram	eras	erat.
			partiti	eramus	eratis	erant.
		<i>Future.</i>	partitus	ero	eris	erit.
			partiti	erimus	eritis	erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	partiar	partiāris	partiātur.	
			partiāmur	partiāmini	partiantur.	
		<i>Past.</i>	partirer	partirēris	partirētur.	
			partirēmur	partiremini	partirentur.	
PERFECT.	{	<i>Present.</i>	partitus	sim	sis	sit.
			partiti	simus	sitis	sint.
		<i>Past.</i>	partitus	essem	esses	esset.
			partiti	essemus	essetis	essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. *partire* or *partitor* ; 3. *partitor*. P. 2. *partimini* ; 3. *partiuntor*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, *partiri*. *Past*, *partitus esse*. *Future*, *partitūrus esse*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*, *partiens*. *Past*, *partitus*. *Future*, *partitūrus*.  
*Ger.*, *partiendus*.

GERUNDS—*partiendi*, *partiendo*, *partiendum*.

SUPINES—*partitum*, *partitu*.

168. A few deponents ending in *-ior* have, in the Imperfect Tenses, forms partly of the third and partly of the fourth Conjugation; thus—

**Patior, I suffer.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	<i>pătior</i>	<i>patēris</i>	<i>patitur.</i>
		<i>patimur</i>	<i>patimini</i>	<i>patiuntur.</i>
	<i>Past.</i>	<i>patiebar</i>	<i>patiebaris</i>	<i>patiebatur.</i>
		<i>patiebamur</i>	<i>patiebamini</i>	<i>patiebantur.</i>
	<i>Future.</i>	<i>patiar</i>	<i>patiēris</i>	<i>patiētur.</i>
		<i>patiēmur</i>	<i>patiēmini</i>	<i>patientur.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	<i>patiar</i>	<i>patiāris</i>	<i>patiatur.</i>
		<i>patiamur</i>	<i>patiamini</i>	<i>patiantur.</i>
	<i>Past.</i>	<i>patērer</i>	<i>patērēris</i>	<i>pateretur.</i>
		<i>paterēmur</i>	<i>paterēmini</i>	<i>paterentur.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. *patēre* or *patitor* ; 3. *patitor*. P. 2. *patimini* ; 3. *patiuntor*.

INFIN. *Pres.*—*pāti*. PART. *Pres.*—*pātiens*. GERUNDS—*patiendi*, etc.

NOTE.—Similar forms occur in the Passives of *căpio*, *făcio*, and the other verbs mentioned in § 156.

## 169. LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS IN COMMON USE.

### First Conjugation.

*All forming the Perfect regularly like HORTOR:*

<i>arbitror, think.</i>	<i>mīror, admire.</i>
<i>cōnor, undertake.</i>	<i>mōror, delay.</i>
<i>dignor, deem worthy.</i>	<i>prēcōr, pray.</i>
<i>glōrior, boast.</i>	<i>tūtōr, defend.</i>
<i>grătūlor, congratulate.</i>	<i>văgōr wander.</i>
<i>īmītor, imitate.</i>	<i>vēnōr, hunt.</i>
<i>lător, rejoice.</i>	<i>versōr, am occupied in.</i>
<i>mīnor, threaten.</i>	

## Second Conjugation.

fāteor, fassus, <i>acknowledge.</i>	reor, rātus, <i>think.</i>
confiteor, confessus, <i>confess.</i>	tueor, tultus, <i>defend.</i>
polliceor, pollicītus, <i>promise.</i>	māreor, mēritus, <i>deserve.</i>

## Third Conjugation.

amplector, amplexus, <i>embrace.</i>	nascor, nātus, <i>am born.</i>
āpiscor, aptus, <i>obtain.</i>	nītor, { nīsus }, <i>strive.</i>
complector, complexus, <i>embrace.</i>	{ nixus },
expergiscor, experrectus, <i>wake up.</i>	obliviscor, oblitus, <i>forget.</i>
fruo, { fruitus }, <i>enjoy.</i>	pāciscor, pactus, <i>bargain.</i>
	pascor, pastus, <i>feed.</i>
fungor, functus, <i>perform.</i>	pātiōr, passus, <i>suffer.</i>
grādior, gressus, <i>step.</i>	prōficiōr, prōfectus, <i>set out.</i>
lābor, lapsus, <i>glide.</i>	quēror, questus, <i>complain.</i>
lōquor, locūtus, <i>speak.</i>	sēquor, sēcūtus, <i>follow.</i>
mōrior, mortuus, <i>die.</i>	vescor, <i>eat.</i>
nanciscor, nactus, <i>obtain.</i>	ulciscor, ultus, <i>avenge.</i>

## Fourth Conjugation.

blandior, blanditus, <i>caress.</i>	mōlior, molitus, <i>strive, design.</i>
expērior, expertus, <i>try.</i>	oppērior, oppertus, <i>wait for.</i>
largior, largītus, <i>give bountifully.</i>	ordior, orsus, <i>begin.</i>
mentior, mentītus, <i>tell a lie.</i>	ōrior, ortus, <i>rise.</i>
mētiōr, mensus, <i>measure.</i>	pōtior, pōtitus, <i>get possession of.</i>

NOTE 1.—*orior* and *potior* have some forms of the third conjugation, as *oritur* and *potitur*.

NOTE 2.—*fruo*, *fungor*, *pascor*, *vescor*, and *utor*, take an ablative of the object.

NOTE 3.—*potior* takes a genitive or an ablative.

## 170. EXAMPLES OF USAGE OF DEPONENT

## VERBS.

Magnum opus et arduum, Brute, conamur.

Propter virtutem iure laudamur, et in virtute recte gloriamur.

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur.

Torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam.—VING.

Non ego ventosae plebis suffragia venor.—HOR.

Et mihi res, non me rebus, subiungere conor.—HOR.  
 Commoda, quibus utimur, lux, qua fruimur, spiritusque, quem  
 ducimus, a Deo nobis dantur.  
 A te peto ut dignitatem meam tueare.  
 Caesar mihi litteris humanissimis gratulatur et omnia pollicetur.  
 Utemur, ut polliceris, et opera et consilio tuo.  
 Mecum una in silvis imitabere Pana canendo.—VIRG.  
 Hortor te ne occasionem dimittas.  
 Numidae plerumque lacte vescuntur.  
 Atheniensium potiti sunt Spartiatae.  
 Impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt.  
 Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.—VIRG.  
 Optatā Troes potiuntur arenā.—VIRG.  
 Auctore utar Simonide.

171. *Conjugation of Volo, I wish, Nolo, I am unwilling*  
 (=non-volo), and *Malo, I prefer* (=magis-volo).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Present.	völō	vis	vult.
		völūmūs	vultis	völunt.
		nölō	nonvis	nonvult.
		nölūmūs	nonvultis	nölunt.
		mālo	māvis	māvult.
		mālūmūs	māvultis	malunt.
	Past.	völēbam	völēbās	völēbāt.
		völēbāmūs	völēbātis	völēbant.
	<i>And similarly nölēbam and mälēbam.</i>			
	Future.	völām	völēs	völēt.
		völēmūs	völētis	völent.
<i>And similarly nölām and mälām.</i>				
PERFECT.	Present.	völūi	völūisti	völūit.
		völūimūs	völūistis	völūerunt (or -ērē).
	<i>And similarly nölūi and mälūi.</i>			
	Past.	völūeram	völūērās	völūērāt.
		völūērāmūs	völūērātis	völūērāt.
	<i>And similarly nölueram and malueram.</i>			
	Future.	voluero	volueris	voluerit.
		voluerimus	volueritis	voluerint.
	<i>And similarly noluero and maluero.</i>			



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Present.	vēlim	velis	velit.
		velimus	velitis	velint.
	<i>And similarly nōlim and mālim.</i>			
	Past.	vellem	vellēs	vellet.
		vellēmus	vellētis	vellent.
	<i>And similarly nollem and mallem.</i>			
PERFECT.	Present.	vōltūerim	vōltūrīs	vōltūrīt.
		vōltūrēmūs	vōltūrētīs	vōltūrēint.
	<i>And similarly nōltūerim and mālūtērīm.</i>			
	Past.	vōltūissem	vōltūissēs	vōltūissēt.
		vōltūissēmūs	vōltūissētīs	vōltūissent.
	<i>And similarly nōltūissem and mālūtūissem.</i>			

*Volo* and *malo* have no Imperative.

The Imperative of *nolo* is—

S. 2. *nōli* or *nōlitō* ; 3. *nōlitō*.

P. 2. *nōlitē* or *nōlitōtē*.

## INFINITIVE.

*Present*, *vellē*, *nollē*, *mallē*.      *Past*, *vōltūissē*, *nōltūissē*, *mālūtūissē*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE—*vōlens*, *nōlens*, (*mālens*).

172.

*Conjugation of Fero, I bear.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Present.	fēro	fers	fert.
		ferimus	fertis	ferunt.
	Past.	fērēbam	ferebas	ferebat.
		ferebamus	ferebatis	ferebant.
	Future.	fēram	feres	feret.
		ferēmūs	feretis	ferent.
PERFECT.	Present.	tūli	tulisti	tulit.
		tulimus	tulistis	tulerunt (or -ēre).
	Past.	tūlēram	tuleras	tulerat.
		tuleramus	tuleratis	tulerant.
	Future.	tūlēro	tuleris	tulerit.
		tulerimus	tuleritis	tulerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	fēram	ferās	ferat.
		ferāmus	feratis	ferant.
	<i>Past.</i>	ferrem	ferres	ferret.
		ferrēmus	ferrētis	ferrent.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	tulērim	tulerīs	tulerit.
		tulerīmus	tulerītis	tulerint.
	<i>Past.</i>	tulisse	tulisses	tulisset.
		tulissemus	tulissetis	tulissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. fer or ferto; 3. ferto. P. 2. ferte or fertote; 3. ferunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, ferre, Past, tūlisce. Future, lātūrus esse.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present, fērens. Future, lātūrus.*

GERUNDS—fērendi, ferendo, ferendum.

SUPINES—lātum, lātu.

173. *Conjugation of Feror, I am borne.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	fēror	ferris	fertur.
		ferīmur	ferimini	feruntur.
	<i>Past.</i>	ferēbar	ferebaris, etc.	
	<i>Future.</i>	fērar	ferēris, etc.	

PERFECT. *Present, lātus sum. Past, latus eram. Future, latus ero.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	fērar	ferāris	ferātur.
		ferāmur	feramini	ferantur.
	<i>Past.</i>	ferrer	ferrēris	ferretur.
		ferrēmur	ferremini	ferrentur.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. *ferre* or *fertor* ; 3. *fertor*.      P. 2. *ferimini* ; 3. *feruntor*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, *ferri*.      *Past*, *lātus esse*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect*, *lātus*.      *Gerundive*, *ferendus*.

## 174.

*Compounds of Fero.*

<i>affēro</i>	= ad-fero,	<i>bring to,</i>	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum.</i>
<i>aufēro</i>	= ab-fero,	<i>take away,</i>	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum.</i>
<i>confēro</i>	= con-fero,	<i>bring together,</i>	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum.</i>
<i>dēfēro</i>	= de-fero,	<i>bring down,</i>	<i>dētūli</i> ,	<i>dēlātum.</i>
<i>diffēro</i>	= dis-fero,	<i>carry different ways,</i>	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum.</i>
<i>effēro</i>	= ex-fero,	<i>carry forth,</i>	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>elātum.</i>
<i>infēro</i>	= in-fero,	<i>carry in,</i>	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum.</i>
<i>offēro</i>	= ob-fero,	<i>bring before,</i>	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum.</i>
<i>perfēro</i>	= per-fero,	<i>carry out,</i>	<i>pertūli</i> ,	<i>perlātum.</i>
<i>prōfēro</i>	= pro-fero,	<i>put forward,</i>	<i>prōtūli</i> ,	<i>prōlātum.</i>
<i>præfēro</i>	= prae-fero,	<i>carry before,</i>	<i>praetūli</i> ,	<i>praelātum.</i>
<i>rēfēro</i>	= re-fero,	<i>carry back,</i>	<i>rettūli</i> ,	<i>rēlātum.</i>
<i>suffēro</i>	= sub-fero,	<i>undergo,</i>	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum.</i>
<i>transfēro</i>	= trans-fero,	<i>carry across,</i>	<i>transtūli</i> ,	<i>translātum.</i>

175. *EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF POSSUM AND  
OTHER IRREGULAR VERBS.*

*Ego plus quam feci facere non possum.*

*Non possunt omnes esse patricii.*

*Cupio illi dare quod vult.—TER.*

*Scire hoc vis?—TER. Visne Romam ire?*

*Cape hoc argentum ac defer.—TER.*

*Aufer te hinc. Aufer te domum.—TER.*

*Abstulit clarum cita mors Achillem.—HOR.*

*Philosophia nunquam satis digne laudari potest.*

Quae res in civitate duae plurimum possunt, hae contra nos  
ambae faciunt hoc tempore.—CIC.

Quam potui maximis itineribus ad montem Amanum exer-  
citus duxi.

Quis fallere possit amantem?—VIRG.

Hic tamen hac mecum poteris requiescere nocte

Fronde super viridi.—VIRG.

Helvetii totius Galliae potiri volebant.

Caput meum obtuli pro patriae periculis.

Leve est miseras ferre, perferre est grave.

Fama victoriae Romam perlata est.

Nunc domum haec ab aede Veneris refero vasa.—PLAUT.

O mihi praeteritos referat si Iuppiter annos.—VIRG.

Caesar paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit.

Hoc volo, sic iubeo; sit pro ratione voluntas.—JUV.

Difficilis, facilis, iucundus, acerbus es idem:

Nec tecum possum vivere, nec sine te.—MART.

Rebus in angustis facile est contemnere vitam,

Fortiter ille facit, qui miser esse potest.—MART.

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogas epigrammata. Nolo.

Non audire, Celer, sed recitare cupis.—MART.

Hunc neque dira venena nec hosticus auferet ensis.—VIRG.

Uticae potius quam Romae esse mallet.

Nolite id mihi dare quod multi invideant.

## 176.

*Conjugation of Eo, I go.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	ëo	is	it.
		imus	itis	ëunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	ibam	ibas, etc.	
	<i>Future.</i>	ibo	ibis, etc.	
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	ivi	ivisti	ivit.
		ivimus	ivistis	iverunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	iveram	iveras, etc.	
	<i>Future.</i>	ivero	iveris, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	eam	eas	eat.
		eamus	eatis	eant.
	<i>Past.</i>	irem	ires	iret.
		iremus	iretis	irent.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	Iverim	iveris, etc.	
	<i>Past.</i>	Ivissem, etc.		
	<i>Future.</i>	Ivero, etc.		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. I or Ito ; 3. Ito. P. 2. Ite or itote ; 3. eunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present, Ire. Past, Ivisse. Future, Itūrus esse.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Present, N. iens, G. euntis, D. eunti, etc. Future, Itūrus.*

GERUNDS—eundi, eundo, eundum.

SUPINES—Itum, Itū.

NOTE 1.—The *v* of the Perfect tenses is usually omitted, as *isti, ieram, issem*.

NOTE 2.—The Passive form *itur*, with *a me, a nobis* implied, occurs, as—

*Itur in antiquam silvam, We enter a primeval forest.*—VIRG.

NOTE 3.—The Passive Infinitive *iri* is used with the supine of a verb to supply the want of a future infinitive passive, as—

*Brutum a me visum iri puto, I think I ought to pay a visit to Brutus.*

Compounds of *Eo*.

177. These usually form the perfect in *-ii* and the supine in *-itum*.

ādeo, <i>go away.</i>	pēreo, <i>pass away, perish.</i>
ādeo, <i>approach.</i>	præeo, <i>go before, dictate.</i>
cōeo, <i>unite.</i>	prætereō, <i>pass by.</i>
exeo, <i>go out.</i>	prōdeo, <i>go forth.</i>
īneo, <i>go in.</i>	rēdeo, <i>return.</i>
intēreo, <i>perish utterly.</i>	sūbeo, <i>to go under ; undergo.</i>
ōbeo, <i>discharge, meet.</i>	transeo, <i>go across.</i>

NOTE 1.—Observe the following phrases:—

inire gratiam	= to be reconciled.
obire mortem	= to die.
obire diem	= to die.
ire in malam rem	= to go to perdition.

NOTE 2.—The diphthong in *præeo* is often shortened by the poets.

NOTE 3.—*Ambio*, *go round*, *canvass*, is derived from *eo*, but it is in the main conjugated like *audio*.

NOTE 4.—*Veneo*, *I am being sold*, is from *venum eo*, *I go for sale*.

## 178. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF *EO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

*Abi, virum te iudico. I prae, sequar.*

*Abiere Romani ut victores, Etrusci pro victis.*

*Illuc, unde abii, redeo. Celeriter isti, redisti.*

*Uxor dormitum ire me iubet.*—PLAUT.

*Alexander tertio et tricesimo anno mortem obiit.*

*Vespasianus diem obiit circiter annos quinquaginta natus.*

*Munus vigiliarum Senatores, qui per aetatem ac valetudinem poterant, per se ipsi obibant.*

*Caesar in gratiam rediit cum Pompeio.*

*Redeo ad illud, quod initio scripsi.*

*Germani in Helvetiorum fines transibant.*

*Caesar Rhenum transire constituit.*

*Vim subire atque invidiam malui, quam de meo statu declinare.*

*Nec, quae praeteriit, iterum revocabitur unda,*

*Nec, quae praeteriit, hora redire potest.*—Ov.

179. *Conjugation of Fio, I am made.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	Present. fio	fis	fit.
				funt.
	{	Past. fiebam	fiebas, etc.	
	{	Future. fiam	fies, etc.	
PERFECT.		Present, factus sum.	Past, factus eram.	
			Future, factus ero.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{	Present. fiam	fias, etc.
	{	Past. fierem	fieres, etc.
PERFECT.	{	Present. factus sim	sis, etc.
	{	Past. factus essem	esses, etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. fi.                      P. 2. fite.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, fieri.                      Past, factus esse.

## PARTICIPLES.

Past, factus.      Gerundive, faciendus.

180. *Conjugation of Edo, I eat.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Imp. Pres.*, edo, edis or es, edit or est; edimus, editis or estis, edunt.  
*Imp. Past*, edēbam, etc.  
*Imp. Fut.*, edam, edēs, etc.  
*Perf. Pres.*, edi, edisti, edit; edimus, edistis, edērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Imp. Pres.*, edam or edim, edas or edis, etc.  
*Imp. Past*, edērem or essem, ederes or esses, etc.  
*Perf. Pres.*, edērim, ederis, etc.  
*Perf. Past*, edissem, edisses, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

- S. 2. *ēde or ēs, ēdīto or esto* ; 3. *ēdīto or esto*.  
 P. 2. *ēdīte or este, ēdītōte or estōte* ; 3. *ēdunto*.

## INFINITIVE.

*Present, ēdēre or esse. Past, ēdisse. Future, ēsūrus esse.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present, ēdens. Future, ēsūrus. Gerundive, ēdendus. Supine, ēsum.*

## UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

181. Unipersonal Verbs are conjugated in the third person singular only of the tenses of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive. They are usually called Impersonal Verbs, because they have no personal subject in a sentence.

Verbs in common use of this class are—

<i>oportet (me), it behoves (me).</i>	} With a Genitive of the object of pity, disgust, etc.
<i>miseret (me), it excites pity in (me).</i>	
<i>taedet (me), it disgusts (me).</i>	
<i>piget (me), it grieves (me).</i>	
<i>pudet (me), it shames (me).</i>	
<i>paenitet (me), it repents (me).</i>	
<i>libet (mihi), it pleases (me).</i>	
<i>licet (mihi), it is lawful (for me).</i>	

NOTE.—Other tenses besides the Imperfect-Present occur, as for example—

*oportēbat, oportuit, oportēbit, oportēre* ; *pigeat* ; *paeniteret*.

182. Some personal verbs are used impersonally with particular meanings, such are—

<i>interest, it is of advantage.</i>	<i>accēdit, it happens.</i>
<i>constat, it is admitted.</i>	<i>accēdit, it is added.</i>
<i>iūvat, it delights.</i>	<i>convēnit, it is agreed.</i>
<i>plācet, it pleases.</i>	<i>videtur, it seems.</i>
<i>dēcet, it is becoming.</i>	<i>restat, it remains.</i>
<i>dēdēcet, it is unbecoming.</i>	<i>dicitur, it is said.</i>



The following express changes of season or weather—

tōnat, *it thunders.*

fulgūrat, *it lightens.*

pluit, *it rains.*

ningit, *it snows.*

grandinat, *it hails.*

rōrat, *fine rain is falling.*

### 183.     *EXAMPLES OF VERBS USED                   IMPERSONALLY.*

Peccare nemini licet.   Fratris tui me pudet pigetque.

Poenitet me consilii.   Taedet nos vitae.

Nihil in bello oportet contemni.   Nonne te miseret mei?

Abeo intro; taedet sermonis tui.—PLAUT.

Ita fieri non solum oportet, sed etiam necesse est.

Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum.

De republica non libet (mihi) plura scribere.

Mea mater, tui me miseret, mei piget.

Me non solum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet.

Oratorem irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet.

Iuvat integros accedere fontes.—LUCR.

Cum pluit in terras et venti nubila portant.—LUCR.

Ut subito, ut propere, ut valide tonuit!—PLAUT.

Restat igitur ut motus astrorum sit voluntarius.

Unum restat ut te in iudicium vocem.

Aequum videtur tibi ut ego quod alienum est meum esse dicam?

Non placet Stoicis avium cantibus interesse Deum.

Hieme ningit, grandinat aestate.

Ante rorat quam pluit.

Satis constat, *it is generally agreed.*

Convenit inter omnes, *all are agreed.*

Discrepat inter scriptores, *writers give different accounts.*

Ut dicitur, *as the story goes.*

Casu accidit ut id, quod Romae audierat, primus nuntiaret.

Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse.

NOTE 1.—Accēdit, "*it is added*," "You must also take into

account," is followed by *ut* with the Subjunctive, or *quod* with the Indicative when a simple fact is recited—

Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset. Accedit quod patrem tuum amo.

NOTE 2.—Dicitur generally has a personal subject—

Aristaeus olivae dicitur inventor.

NOTE 3.—Interest, *it is of advantage*, takes a genitive of the person or thing benefited—

Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quamprimum venire,  
*It is of great importance to your pecuniary interests that you should be here as soon as possible.*

Clodii intererat Milonem perire, *It was to the advantage of Clodius that Milo should die.*

NOTE 4.—Rēfert, *it concerns*, usually takes the feminine ablative of the possessive pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*; and *interest* is used in the same way with these pronouns—

Id mea minime refert, *That is no sort of concern to me.*—TER.

Tua et mea maxime interest te valere, *Your welfare is of the utmost importance to you and to me.*

Some explain *mea refert* as = *meam rem fert*, *it makes for my interest.*

N.B.—Rēfert has nothing to do with the verb *rēfero*, *bring back*.

NOTE 5. The want of a distinct past tense in our verbs Ought, Could, Might, compels us to use the Past Infinitive with them in cases where the Latins could use the Present Infinitive, thus—

#### ENGLISH.

You ought to have done this.

I could have yielded to this fault.

Cato might have enjoyed himself at Tusculum.

#### LATIN.

Hoc te facere oportuit.

Huic potui succumbere culpa.—VIR.

Catoni licuit Tusculi se delectare.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

184. Defective verbs are those found in certain parts only; such are—

- (1.) *Praeteritives, or Verbs found only in tenses derived from the Perfect, as—*

*Coepi, I have begun ; Odi, I hate ; Měmini, I remember.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	coepi, coepisti, etc.	ōdi, odisti, etc.	měmini, meministi, etc.
	<i>Past.</i>	coepēram.	ōdēram.	měmīnēram.
	<i>Future.</i>	coepēro.	ōdēro.	měmīnēro.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	coepērim	ōdērim.	měmīnērim.
	<i>Past.</i>	coepissem.	ōdissem.	měmīnissem.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Perfect, coepisse ; ōdisse ; mēmīnisse.*

*Memini* has an Imperative *memento, mementote.*

*Coepi* has Past-Part. Pass. *coeptus*, and Fut. Part. *coepturus.*

*Odi* has Fut. Participle *ōsūrus.*

- (2.) *Inquam, I say, of which the following parts are found :—*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	inquam	inquis	inquit.
		inquimus		inquiunt.
	<i>Past.</i>			inquiet.
	<i>Future.</i>		inquires	inquiet.
PERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>		inquisti	inquit.

In the Subjunctive we find *inquias* and *inquiat.*

In the Imperative we find *inquē* and *inquito.*

- (3.) *Aio, I say—*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Present.</i>	aio	ais	ait.
				aiunt.
	<i>Past.</i>	aiebam	aiebas	aiebat.
		aiebamus	aiebatis	aiebant.

Of the Subjunctive we find *aias, aiat,* and *aiant.*

The Participle *aiens* is found.

(4.) *Fari, to speak*—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	{ Present.		fatur.
	{ Future.	fabor	fabitur.
PERFECT.	{ Present.	fatus sum	fatus es, etc.
	{ Past.	fatus eram	fatus eras, etc.

IMPERATIVE—fārē.

INFINITIVE—fāri.

GERUNDS—fandi *and* fando.

SUPINE—fātu.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present,* , fantis, fanti, fantem. *Past,* fātus.

GERUNDIVE—fandus.

## (5.) The following Imperatives and Infinitives :—

IMPERATIVE.	{ Salvē, hail!	salvēto	salvete.
	{ Hāvē, hail!	havēto	havēte.
	{ Vālē, farewell!	valēto	valēte.
	{ Āgē, come!		āgīte.
	{ Āpāge, away!		
	{ Cēdō, come give me; cēdīte or cētte.		
INFINITIVE.	Salvēre	havēre	valēre.

Also the 2 pers. Fut.—Salvēbis and valēbis.

## 185. TABLE OF VERBS,

*Showing Present-Imperfect, Present-Infinitive, Present-Perfect, and Supine.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Most verbs of this Conjugation are conjugated like *āmo*, thus :—

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
amo	love	amāre	amāvi	amātum.

## EXCEPTIONS.

crēpo	rattle	crēpāre	crēpui	crēpītum.
cūbo	lie down	cūbāre	cūbui	cūbītum.
do	give	dāre	dēdi	dātum.
dōmo	tame	dōmāre	dōmui	dōmītum.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
enēco	<i>kill outright</i>	enēcāre	enēcui	enectum.
frico	<i>rub</i>	fricāre	fricui	frictum.
iūvo	<i>help</i>	iūvāre	iūvi	iūtum.
lāvo	<i>wash</i>	lāvāre	lāvi	lāvātum or lōtum.
mīco	<i>glitter</i>	mīcāre	mīcui	
pōto	<i>drink</i>	pōtāre	pōtāvi	pōtum.
sēco	<i>cut</i>	sēcāre	sēcui	sectum.
sōno	<i>sound</i>	sōnāre	sōnui	sōnītum.
sto	<i>stand</i>	stāre	stēti	stātum.
tōno	<i>thunder</i>	tōnāre	tōnui	tōnītum.
vēto	<i>forbid</i>	vētāre	vētui	vētītum.

NOTE 1.—Explico, *unfold*; complico, *fold together*; and implico, *infol*d, have the regular forms in -āvi, -ātum in Cicero; but the forms -ui, -ītum are used by Caesar and other writers.

NOTE 2.—Emico, *dart forth*, has the Perfect emicui, and no Supine.

Dimico, *fight*, has dimicāvi, dimicātum.

NOTE 3.—The last syllable but one in the 3d pers. plur. of the Perfect-Indicative is sometimes shortened by the poets, as dēdērunt, stētērunt.

NOTE 4.—The compounds of sto, as adsto, *stand by*, have the Perfect -stīti: the Supines are usually -stātum, but -stītum is found in some places.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

There is no form that can be called regular in this conjugation: the following is a list of the verbs in ordinary use:—

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
ādōleo	<i>burn</i>	ādōlēre	ādōlui	ādultum.
algeo	<i>be cold</i>	algēre	alsi.	
arceo	<i>ward off</i>	arcēre	arui.	
ardeo	<i>catch fire</i>	ardēre	arsi	arsum.
augeo	<i>increase</i>	augēre	auxi	auctum.
cāleo	<i>be hot</i>	cālēre	cālui.	
cāreo	<i>be without</i>	cārēre	cārui.	
cāveo	<i>be wary</i>	cāvēre	cāvi	cautum.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
censeo	<i>reckon</i>	censēre	censui	censum.
cio	<i>rouse</i>	ciēre	civi	citum.
coerceo	<i>restrain</i>	coercēre	coercui	coercitum.
dēbeo	<i>owe</i>	dēbēre	dēbui	dēbitum.
dēleo	<i>destroy</i>	dēlēre	dēlēvi	dēletum.
dōceo	<i>teach</i>	dōcēre	dōcui	doctum.
dōleo	<i>be in pain</i>	dōlēre	dōlui.	
fāveo	<i>favour</i>	fāvēre	fāvi	fautum.
ferveo	<i>glow</i>	fervēre	ferbui.	
fleo	<i>weep</i>	flēre	flēvi	flētum.
fōveo	<i>cherish</i>	fōvēre	fōvi	fōtum.
frigeo	<i>be cold</i>	frigēre	frixi.	
fulgeo	<i>shine</i>	fulgēre	fulsi.	
hābeo	<i>have</i>	hābēre	hābui	hābitum.
haereo	<i>stick</i>	haerēre	haesi	haesum.
iāceo	<i>lie</i>	iācēre	iācui.	
impleo	<i>fill</i>	implere	implēvi	implētum.
indulgeo	<i>foster</i>	indulgere	indulsi.	
iūbeo	<i>order</i>	iūbēre	iussi	iussum.
lūceo	<i>shine</i>	lucēre	luxi.	
lūgeo	<i>grieve for</i>	lugēre	luxi.	
maereo	<i>mourn</i>	maerēre	maerui.	
māneo	<i>remain</i>	mānēre	mansi	mansum.
mēreo	<i>earn</i>	mērēre	mēruī	mēritum.
misceo	<i>mix</i>	miscēre	miscui	mixtum.
mōneo	<i>warn</i>	mōnēre	mōnui	mōnitum.
mordeo	<i>bite</i>	mordēre	momordi	morsum.
mōveo	<i>move</i>	mōvēre	mōvi	mōtum.
mulceo	<i>soothe</i>	mulcēre	mulsi	mulsum.
mulgeo	<i>milk</i>	mulgēre	mulsi	mulsum.
nōceo	<i>hurt</i>	nōcēre	nōcui	nōcītum.
ōleo	<i>smell</i>	ōlēre	ōlui.	
pāreo	<i>obey</i>	pārēre	pārui.	
pāveo	<i>dread</i>	pāvēre	pāvi.	
pendeo	<i>hang</i>	pendēre	pēpendi	pensum.
plāceo	<i>please</i>	plācēre	plācui	plācītum.
possideo	<i>possess</i>	possidēre	possēdi	possessum.
praebeo	<i>afford</i>	praebēre	praebui	praebītum.
prandeo	<i>dine</i>	prandēre	prandi	pransum.
rideo	<i>laugh</i>	ridēre	risi	risum.
sēdeo	<i>sit</i>	sēdēre	sēdi	sessum.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
sorbeo	<i>swallow</i>	sorbere	sorbui.	
spondeo	<i>promise</i>	spondere	spōndi	sponsum.
squaleo	<i>be rough</i>	squalere	squalui.	
suadeo	<i>advise</i>	suadere	suāsi	suasum.
taceo	<i>be silent</i>	tacere	tācui	tācītum.
teneo	<i>hold</i>	tēnere	tēnui	tentum.
terreo	<i>alarm</i>	terrere	terrui	terrītum.
tergeo	<i>wipe</i>	tergere	tersi	tersum.
tondeo	<i>shear</i>	tondere	tōtondi	tonsum.
torpeo	<i>benumb</i>	torpere	torpui.	
torqueo	<i>twist</i>	torquere	torsi	tortum.
torreo	<i> parch</i>	torrere	torrui	tostum.
turgeo	<i>swell</i>	turgere	tursi.	
valeo	<i>be well</i>	vālere	vālui.	
video	<i>see</i>	videre	vidi	visum.
voveo	<i>vow</i>	vōvere	vōvi	vōtum.
urgeo	<i>press</i>	urgere	ursi.	

## SEMI-DEPONENTS.

audeo	<i>dare</i>	audere	ausus sum.
gaudeo	<i>rejoice</i>	gaudere	gāvisus sum.
sōleo	<i>be wont</i>	sōlere	sōlītus sum.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

There is no regular form for this Conjugation. The Verbs are here arranged according to the final letter in their Present-stems.

## B stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
accumbo	<i>recline</i>	accumbere	accūbui	accūbītum.
bibo	<i>drink</i>	bibere	bībi.	
incumbo	<i>lean on</i>	incumbere	incūbui	incūbītum.
lambo	<i>lick</i>	lambere	lambi	lambītum.
nūbo	<i>become a bride</i>	nūbere	nupsi	nuptum.
scribo	<i>write</i>	scribere	scripsi	scriptum.

## C stems.

cresco	<i>increase</i>	crescere	crēvi	crētum.
dico	<i>say</i>	dicere	dixi	dictum.
disco	<i>learn</i>	discere	didici.	

PRES. - IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
dūco	<i>lead</i>	dūcēre	duxi	ductum.
nosco	<i>know</i>	noscēre	nōvi	nōtum.
	agnosco	<i>recognise</i>	agnōvi	agnitum.
	cognosco	<i>ascertain</i>	cognovi	cognitum.
	ignosco	<i>forgive</i>	ignovi	ignōtum.
parco	<i>spare</i>	parcēre	pēperci	parcītum.
pasco	<i>feed</i>	pascēre	pāvi	pastum.
posco	<i>demand</i>	poscēre	pōposci.	
quiesco	<i>rest</i>	quiescēre	quiēvi	quietum.
scisco	<i>inquire</i>	sciscēre	scīvi	scitum.
suesco	<i>be accustomed</i>	suescēre	sūēvi	sūētum.
vinco	<i>conquer</i>	vincēre	vici	victum.

## D stems.

abdo	<i>hide</i>	abdēre	abdīdi	abdītum.
addo	<i>add</i>	addēre	addīdi	addītum.
accendo	<i>inflamm</i>	accendēre	accendi	accensum.
cādo	<i>fall</i>	cādēre	cēcīdi	cāsum.
	occīdo	<i>fall down</i>	occīdi	occāsum.
caedo	<i>cut</i>	caedēre	cēcīdi	caesum.
	occīdo	<i>kill</i>	occīdi	occisum.
cēdo	<i>yield</i>	cēdere	cessi	cessum.
claudio	<i>shut</i>	claudēre	clausi	clausum.
condo	<i>found, hide</i>	condēre	condīdi	conditum.
crēdo	<i>believe</i>	crēdēre	crēdīdi	crēdītum.
cūdo	<i>hammer</i>	cūdēre	cūdi	cūsum.
dēfendo	<i>protect</i>	dēfendēre	dēfendi	dēfensum.
divīdo	<i>divide</i>	divīdēre	divisi	divisum.
ēdo	<i>eat</i>	ēdēre	ēdi	ēsum.
ēdo	<i>put forth</i>	ēdēre	ēdīdi	ēdītum.
findo	<i>cleave</i>	findēre	fīdi	fissum.
fundo	<i>pour</i>	fundēre	fūdi	fūsum.
laedo	<i>hurt</i>	laedēre	laesi	laesum.
lūdo	<i>play</i>	lūdēre	lūsi	lūsum.
mando	<i>chew</i>	mandēre	mandi	mansum.
offendo	<i>offend</i>	offendēre	offendi	offensum.
pando	<i>open</i>	pandēre	pandi	passum.
pendo	<i>weigh</i>	pendēre	pēpendi	pensum.
plaudo	<i>applaud</i>	plaudēre	plausi	plausum.
prēhendo	<i>grasp</i>	prēhendēre	prēhendi	prēhensum.
rādo	<i>scrape</i>	rādēre	rāsi	rāsum.



PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
rōdo	<i>gnaw</i>	rōdēre	rōsi	rōsum.
rūdo	<i>bray</i>	rūdēre	rūdīvi	rūdītum.
scando	<i>climb</i>	scandēre	scandi	scansum.
scindo	<i>tear</i>	scindēre	scīdi	scissum.
sīdo	<i>settle</i>	sīdere	sīdi or sēdi	sessum.
tendo	<i>stretch</i>	tendēre	tētendi	tensum.
trādo	<i>deliver up</i>	trādēre	trādīdi	trādītum.
trūdo	<i>thrust</i>	trūdēre	trūsi	trūsum.
tundo	<i>beat</i>	tundēre	tūtūdi	tunsum.
vādo	<i>go</i>	vādēre	-vāsi	-vāsum.

NOTE 1.—Compounds of claudo, as inclūdo, *shut in*, make -clūsi, -clūsum.

NOTE 2.—Explōdo, *hiss off the stage*, ex-plaudo, makes explōsi, explōsum.

NOTE 3.—Ascendo, ad-scando, *climb up*, makes ascendi, ascensum.

NOTE 4.—Ostendo, ob-tendo, *show*, makes ostendi, ostensum or ostentum.

NOTE 5.—Compounds of tundo, as contundo, make -tūdi, -tūsum.

NOTE 6.—The perfect and supine of vado are only found in compounds, as ēvādo, *go forth*, ēvāsi, ēvāsum.

#### G stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
affligo	<i>debase</i>	affligēre	afflixi	afflictum.
āgo	<i>drive</i>	āgēre	ēgi	actum.
cingo	<i>gird</i>	cingēre	cinxi	cinctum.
figo	<i>fix</i>	figēre	fixi	fixum.
fingo	<i>form</i>	figēre	finxi	fictum.
frango	<i>break</i>	frangēre	frēgi	fractum.
iungo	<i>join</i>	iungēre	iunxi	iunctum.
lēgo	<i>choose, read</i>	lēgēre	lēgi	lectum.
mergo	<i>sink</i>	mergēre	mersi	mersum.
pango	<i>fasten</i>	pangēre	pēpīgi	pactum.
pingo	<i>paint</i>	pingēre	pinxi	pictum.
plango	<i>beat the breast</i>	plangēre	planxi	planctum.
pungo	<i>prick</i>	pungēre	pūpīgi	punctum.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
rĕgo	<i>direct</i>	rĕgĕre	rexī	rectum.
spargo	<i>scatter</i>	spargĕre	sparsi	sparsum.
stringo	<i>bind</i>	stringĕre	strinxi	strictum.
sūgo	<i>suck</i>	sūgĕre	suxi	suctum.
tango	<i>touch</i>	tangĕre	tēgi	tactum.
tĕgo	<i>cover</i>	tĕgĕre	texi	tectum.
tingo	<i>moisten</i>	tingĕre	tinxi	tinctum.
ungo	<i>anoint</i>	ungĕre	unxi	unctum.

NOTE 1.—Among the compounds of āgo, notice ādigo, *compel*, adĕgi, adactum, and cōgo, *compel*, coĕgi, coactum.

NOTE 2.—Among the compounds of lĕgo notice—

colligo	<i>collect</i>	collĕgi	collectum.
perlĕgo	<i>read through</i>	perlĕgi	perlectum.
diligo	<i>esteem</i>	dilexi	dilectum.
intellĕgo	<i>understand</i>	intellexi	intellectum.
neglĕgo	<i>neglect</i>	neglexi	neglectum.

NOTE 3.—Among the compounds of rĕgo notice—

arrigo	<i>raise</i>	arrexī	arrectum.
pergo	<i>proceed</i>	perrexī	perrectum.
porrigo	<i>stretch out</i>	porrexī	porrectum.
surgo	<i>rise</i>	surrexī	surrectum.

NOTE 4.—Observe the following compounds—

confringo	<i>break in pieces</i>	confrĕgi	confractum.
compungo	<i>prick</i>	compunxi	compunctum.
conspargo	<i>sprinkle</i>	conspersi	conspersum.
contingo	<i>reach</i>	contigi	contactum.

#### H stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
trāho	<i>drag</i>	trāhĕre	traxi	tractum.
vĕho	<i>carry</i>	vĕhĕre	vexi	vectum.

#### I stems.

allicio	<i>allure</i>	allicĕre	allexi	allectum.
aspicio	<i>behold</i>	aspicĕre	aspexi	aspectum.
cāpio	<i>take</i>	cāpĕre	cēpi	captum.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
cūpio	<i>desire</i>	cūpĕre	cūpīvi	cūpītum.
fācio	<i>make</i>	fācĕre	fēcī	factum.
ēlicio	<i>draw forth</i>	ēlicĕre	ēlicui	ēlicitum.
fōdio	<i>dig</i>	fōdĕre	fōdī	fōssum.
fūgio	<i>flee</i>	fūgĕre	fūgī	fūgītum.
iācio	<i>throw</i>	iācĕre	iēcī	iactum.
pārio	<i>bring forth</i>	pārĕre	pēpĕri	partum.
quātio	<i>shake</i>	quātĕre		quassum.
rāpio	<i>seize</i>	rāpĕre	rāpui	raptum.
sāpio	<i>taste</i>	sāpĕre	sāpī.	

NOTE 1.—Conspicio, *view*, and inspicio, *examine*, are conjugated like aspicio.

NOTE 2.—Compounds of cāpio, such as incipio, *begin*, and rēcipio, *receive*, make -cēpi and -ceptum.

NOTE 3.—When fācio, iācio, and rāpio, are compounded, we get forms with *i* in place of *ā*, as perficio, *accomplish*, incipio, *throw in*, corripio, *seize quickly*.

NOTE 4.—Notice the following compounds of quātio—  
 concūtio concūtere concussi concussum *shake violently.*  
 percūtio percūtere percussi percussum *strike.*

#### L stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
ālō	<i>feed</i>	ālĕre	ālui	altum.
cōlō	<i>cultivate</i>	cōlĕre	cōlui	cultum.
consūlo	<i>consult</i>	consūlĕre	consūlui	consultum.
fallo	<i>deceive</i>	fallĕre	fĕfelli	falsum.
mōlo	<i>grind</i>	mōlĕre	mōlui	moltum.
occūlo	<i>hide</i>	occūlĕre	occūlui	occultum.
pello	<i>thrust</i>	pellĕre	pĕpūli	pulsum.
percello	<i>strike down</i>	percellĕre	percūli	perculsum.
tollo	<i>lift</i>	tollĕre	sustūli	sublātum.
vello	<i>pluck</i>	vellĕre	velli	vulsum.

NOTE.—Rĕfello, *refute*, has the perfect rĕfelli—

compello	makes	compūli	compulsum.
rĕpello	makes	reppūli	rĕpulsum.

**M stems.**

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
ēmo	<i>buy</i>	ēmēre	ēmi	emptum.
frēmo	<i>murmur</i>	frēmēre	frēmui	frēmītum.
gēmo	<i>groan</i>	gēmēre	gēmui	gēmītum.
prēmo	<i>press</i>	prēmēre	pressi	pressum.
trēmo	<i>tremble</i>	trēmēre	trēmui	
vōmo	<i>vomit</i>	vōmēre	vōmui	vōmītum.

NOTE 1.—Observe the following compounds of *ēmo*—

ādīmo	<i>take away</i>	ādēmi	ādemptum.
coēmo	<i>buy</i>	coēmi	coemptum.
cōmo	<i>dress</i>	compsi	comptum.
dēmo	<i>take away</i>	dempsi	demptum.
prōmo	<i>bring out</i>	prompsi	promptum.
sūmo	<i>take</i>	sumpsi	sumptum.

NOTE 2.—Compounds of *prēmo* change *ē* into *ī*, as *comprīmo*, *press together*, *dēprīmo*, *press down*, *opprīmo*, *crush*, and make *-pressi*, *-pressum*.

**N stems.**

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
cāno	<i>sing</i>	cānēre	cēcīni	cantum.
cerno	<i>decide</i>	cernēre	crēvi	crētum.
contemno	<i>despise</i>	contemnēre	contempsi	contemptum.
gigno	<i>produce</i>	gignēre	gēnui	gēnītum.
lino	<i>smear</i>	linēre	lēvi	litum.
pōno	<i>place</i>	pōnēre	pōsui	pōsītum.
sino	<i>permit</i>	sīnēre	sīvi	sītum.
sperno	<i>despise</i>	spernēre	sprēvi	sprētum.
sterno	<i>strew</i>	sternēre	strāvi	strātum.

NOTE.—*concīno*, *sing in unison* makes *concīnui* *concentum*,  
*decerno*, *decree* makes *decrēvi* *decrētum*.  
*desino*, *cease* makes *desīvi* or *desii* *desītum*.

## P stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
carpo	<i>pluck</i>	carpère	carpsi	carptum.
rēpo	<i>creep</i>	rēpère	repsi	reptum.
rumpo	<i>break</i>	rumpère	rūpi	ruptum.
scalpo	<i>scratch</i>	scalpère	scalpsi	scalptum.
sculpo	<i>carve</i>	sculpère	sculpsi	sculptum.
serpo	<i>crawl</i>	serpère	serpsi	serptum.
strēpo	<i>make a noise</i>	strēpère	strēpsi	strēptum.

NOTE.—Decerpo, *pluck off*, makes decerpsi, decerptum.

## R stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
curro	<i>run</i>	currère	cūcurri	cursum.
géro	<i>bear</i>	gérère	gessi	gestum.
quaero	<i>seek</i>	quaerère	quaesivi	quaesitum.
séro	<i>sow</i>	sérère	sēvi	sātum.
séro	<i>join</i>	sérère		sertum.
téro	<i>rub</i>	térère	trīvi	tritum.
ūro	<i>burn</i>	ūrère	ussi	ustum.
verro	<i>sweep</i>	verrère	verri	versum.

NOTE 1.—Accurro, *run to*, makes accurri, accursum; and the other compounds of curro have a similar conjugation.

NOTE 2.—Compounds of quaero change *ae* into *i*, as conquiro, conquisivi, conquisitum.

NOTE 3.—The perfect (sēruī) of séro, *join*, is not found; but the form is found in compounds; as—

conséro	<i>join together</i>	consérui	consertum.
dēséro	<i>desert</i>	dēsérui	desertum.

## S stems.

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
arcesso	<i>fetch</i>	arcessère	arcessivi	arcessitum.
cāpesso	<i>catch at</i>	cāpessère	cāpessivi	cāpessitum.
fācesso	<i>perform</i>	fācessère	fācessivi	fācessitum.
incesso	<i>attack</i>	incessère	incessivi	
lācesso	<i>provoke</i>	lācessere	lācessivi	lācessitum.
visō	<i>visit</i>	visère	visi	visum.

**T stems.**

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
flecto	<i>bend</i>	flectere	flexi	flexum.
mēto	<i>mow</i>	mētēre	messui	messum.
mitto	<i>send</i>	mittēre	missi	missum.
necto	<i>bind</i>	nectere	nexi	nexum.
pecto	<i>comb</i>	pectere	pexi	pexum.
pēto	<i>seek</i>	pētēre	pētīvi	pētītum.
plēcto	<i>strike</i>	plectere		plexum.
sisto	<i>place</i>	sistēre	stīti	stātum.
sterto	<i>snore</i>	stertēre	stertui.	
verto	<i>turn</i>	vertēre	verti	versum.

NOTE.—The perfects nexui, petii, and stēti, also occur.

Desisto, *cease*, makes destīti, destītum.

**U stems.**

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
ācuo	<i>sharpen</i>	ācuere	ācui	acutum.
abnuo	<i>refuse</i>	abnuere	abnui.	
annuo	<i>assent</i>	annuere	annui.	
arguo	<i>prove</i>	arguere	argui	argūtum.
congruo	<i>agree</i>	congruere	congrui.	
coquo	<i>cook</i>	cōquere	coxi	coctum.
extinguo	<i>quench</i>	extinguere	extinxi	extinctum.
exuo	<i>strip off</i>	exuere	exui	exūtum.
fluo	<i>flow</i>	fluere	fluxi.	
imbuo	<i>steep</i>	imbuere	imbui	imbūtum.
induo	<i>put on</i>	induere	indui	indūtum.
linquo	<i>leave</i>	linquere	liqui.	
luo	<i>pay</i>	luere	lui.	
mētuo	<i>fear</i>	mētūere	mētui.	
mīnuo	<i>lessen</i>	mīnuere	minui	minūtum.
nuo	<i>nod</i>	nuere	nui	nūtum.
ruo	<i>tumble down</i>	ruere	ruui	rūtum.
spuo	<i>spit</i>	spuere	spui	spūtum.
stātuo	<i>establish</i>	stātūere	stātui	stātūtum.
struo	<i>build</i>	struere	struxi	structum.
suo	<i>sew</i>	suere	sui	sūtum.
tribuo	<i>bestow</i>	tribuere	tribui	tribūtum.

NOTE.—	rēlinquo	<i>abandon</i>	makes	rēliqui	rēlictum.
	diluo	<i>wash away</i>	makes	dilui	dilūtum.
	destituo	<i>forsake</i>	makes	destitui	destitūtum.

**V stems.**

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
solvo	<i>loose</i>	solvēre	solvi	sōlūtum.
vivo	<i>live</i>	vivēre	vixi	victum.
volvo	<i>roll</i>	volvēre	volvi	vōlūtum.

**X stem.**

texo	<i>weave</i>	texēre	texui	textum.
------	--------------	--------	-------	---------

**INCHOATIVE VERBS.**

Many verbs of the 3d Conjugation end in *sco*, and as they express the beginning of action they are called Inchoative or Inceptive Verbs. Among these are—

ābōlesco	<i>destroy</i>	ābōlēvi.
ādōlesco	<i>grow</i>	ādōlēvi.
cālesco	<i>grow warm</i>	cālui.
contīcesco	<i>grow silent</i>	contīcui.
dālītesco	<i>lurk</i>	dālītui.
horresco	<i>shudder</i>	horruī.
illūcesco	<i>grow light</i>	illuxi.
obmūtesco	<i>become dumb</i>	obmūtui.
obstūpesco	<i>be amazed</i>	obstūpui.
sēnesco	<i>grow old</i>	sēnui.

**SEMI-DEPONENT.**

*fido, trust, fidēre, fīsus sum.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Most of the Verbs are conjugated like *audio*, *audire*, *audivi*, *auditum*; exceptions are—

PRES.-IMPERF.		INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
āmicio	<i>clothe</i>	āmīcere	(amixi)	amictum.
āpērio	<i>open</i>	āpērīre	āpēruī	āpertum.
compērio	<i>ascertain</i>	comperīre	compērī	compertum.
farcio	<i>stuff</i>	farcīre	farsi	fartum.
fērio	<i>strike</i>	fērīre.		
fulcio	<i>prop</i>	fulcīre	fulsi	fultum.
haurio	<i>drain</i>	haurīre	hausi	haustum.
invēnio	<i>find</i>	invēnīre	invēni	inventum.
ōpērio	<i>cover</i>	ōpērīre	ōpēruī	ōpertum.
rēpērio	<i>discover</i>	rēpērīre	reppērī	rēpertum.
saepio	<i>fence in</i>	saepīre	saepsi	saeptum.
saevio	<i>rage</i>	saevīre	saevii	saevitum.
sālio	<i>leap</i>	sālīre	sālui.	
sancio	<i>consecrate</i>	sancīre	sanxi	sanctum.
sarcio	<i>mend</i>	sarcīre	sarsi	sartum.
sentio	<i>perceive</i>	sentīre	sensi	sensum.
sēpēlio	<i>bury</i>	sēpēlīre	sēpēlīvi	sēpultum.
vēnio	<i>come</i>	vēnīre	vēni	ventum.
vincio	<i>bind</i>	vincīre	vinxi	vinctum.

NOTE 1.—*Dēsilio*, *leap down*, makes *dēsilui*, *desultum*.

*Insilio*, *leap on*, makes *insilui*, *insultum*.

NOTE 2.—The Perfect and Supine of *fērio* are supplied by *percussi*, *percussum*.



## PART IV.

### ON CASE-CONSTRUCTIONS.

#### 1. THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

186. In the sentence *Video nostros amicos cupere bellum*, the last four words must be regarded as the *Object* of the transitive verb *video*. In English they would be put in a separate clause, introduced by the conjunction *that*—*I see that our friends are eager for war*.

So again with the *Past Infinitive*—

*Cicero dixit se ad Caesarem scripsisse, Cicero said that he wrote (or, had written) to Caesar.*

and again with the *Future Infinitive*—

*Placitum tibi esse librum meum spero, I hope (that) my book will please you.*

This construction, which occurs very frequently, is called the construction of the *Accusative and Infinitive*.

NOTE.—With impersonal expressions such as—*Constat, it is admitted; certum est, it is determined; fama est, it is reported*, the *Accusative and Infinitive* forms the *Subject* of the sentence.

*Constat Ascanium Albam Longam condidisse.*

*Certius tibi est me esse Romae quam mihi te Athenis.*

*Fama fuit Themistoclem venenum sua sponte sumpsisse.*

187. The accusative with infinitive is used as the object after Verbs of *stating, perceiving, hoping, thinking, rejoicing.*

- Dico, . . . Thales Milesius aquam dixit esse initium rerum.  
 Anaxagoras nivem nigram dixit esse.  
 Cato dicebat nihil agendo homines male agere  
 discere.  
 Plinius dicere solebat amorem magistrum esse  
 optimum.
- Nēgo, . . . Laelius negat eum bene cenare, qui omnia ponat  
 in voluptate.  
 Negat Diagoras esse Deos.
- Sentio, . . . Sentimus calere ignem, nivem esse albam, dulce  
 mel.
- Video, . . . Vides Demosthenem multa perficere, nos multa  
 conari.
- Audio, . . . Audio Catonem mortuum esse.
- Accipio, . . . Sic enim a majoribus nostris accepimus, praetorem  
 quaestori suo parentis loco esse oportere.
- Spēro, . . . Spero me tibi causam probasse.  
 Spero te mihi ignoscere.
- Crēdo, . . . Credo vos non pecuniam sed gloriam concupisse.
- Gaudeo, . . . Gaudeo tibi iucundas meas esse litteras.
- Mīror, . . . Quis miratur me ad accusandum descendere?  
 Miror te ad me nihil scribere.
- Dūbīto, . . . Deos esse dubitavit Protagoras.
- Existīmo, . . . Thales dixit homines existimare oportere deos  
 omnia cernere.
- Nuntio, . . . Fama nuntiabat te isse in Syriam.

## 2. CASES DEPENDING ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES.

### 188. *Genitive with Adjectives.*

Many adjectives take an objective genitive (§ 77). The following are all thus used by Cicero—

- Āvidus, . . . Avidi laudis, *Men eager for glory.*

- Cūpidus, . . Sum cupidus te audiendi, *I am anxious to hear you.*  
 Consciūs, . . Ego mihi nullius culpae consciūs sum, *I am not conscious of having done any wrong.*  
 Expers, . . Homo expers consilii, *A fellow devoid of judgment.*  
 Ignārus, . . Ignarus mearum rerum fui, *I was ignorant about my own affairs.*  
 Invidūs, . . Invidus laudum mearum, *Envious of the praise bestowed on me.*  
 Mēmōr, . . Memores erant virtutis tuae, *They remembered your high character.*  
 Immēmōr, . . Ne me immemorem mandati tui putaveris, *Do not think me unmindful of your commission.*  
 Pēritus, . . Constat inter omnes neminem te juris peritiorem esse, *All allow that your knowledge of law is unsurpassed.*  
 Rūdis, . . Graecarum litterarum rudis, *Unacquainted with Greek.*  
 Sīmīlis, . . Phidias sui similem speciem inclusit in clipeo Minervae, *Phidias inserted a likeness of himself in the shield of Minerva.*  
 Certus, . . Very commonly in the phrase, *Certioorem facere, to make a man better informed, to inform:—*

Utinam tui consilii certior factus essem ;

Pompeius certioorem me sui consilii fecit.

Verbal adjectives in *ax* are seldom used with a genitive by Cicero, but they are often found in other writers—

Vir capax imperii, *A man well fitted to rule.*—TAC.

Vir tenax propositi, *A man steadfast in purpose.*—HOR.

Tempus, edax rerum, *Time, devourer of things.*—OV.

So also Present Participles used as Adjectives—

Civis amans patriae, *A patriotic citizen.*—CIC.

Ad nos tui amantissimos veni, *Come to us who are so entirely devoted to you.*—CIC.

**Appetentes gloriae, Eager in the pursuit of fame.**—CIC.

Mortis timentes, *Fearful of death.*—LUOR.

Metuens virgae, *Fearing the rod.*—JUV.

**Metuens futuri, *Dreading the future.*—HOR.**

**Patiens operum, Capable of enduring toil.**—VIRG.

Neque pugnae neque fugae potentes, *Unable to fight or to flee.*—LIV.

**189.**

*Dative with Adjectives.*

**Amicus, friendly, . . . Tribuni plebis sunt nobis amici.**

Inimicus, hostile, . . . Numina sint precibus non inimica  
meis.—Ov.

Utilis, *profitable*, . . . Neque honestum mihi neque utile ipsi  
virgini est.—TER.

Inūtilis, *useless*, . . . Inutilis sibi, perniciosus patriae.

Vicinus, *neighbouring*, Mantua, vae, miserae nimium vicina  
Cremonae.—VIRG.

**Finitimus, bordering on, Aegritudini finitimus est metus.**

**Proximus, nearest to, . Proximus sum egomet mihi.—TER.**

Similis, like, . . . Dulcis et alta quies, placidaeque simi-  
lima morti.—VIRG.

**Dissimilis, unlike, . . . Nihil tam dissimile quam Cotta Sulpicio.**

Pār, *equal*, . . . . Marcello fratri tuo aut par aut certe  
proximus sum.

Impār, unequal, . . . Impar Achilli, No match for Achilles.—  
VIRG.

Aptus, suitable, . . . Haec genera dicendi aptiora sunt  
adulescentibus.

**Mātūrus, *fit*,** . . . Nondum maturus imperio Ascanius  
Aeneae filius fuit.

Grātus, *pleasing*, . . . Hoc mihi gratius facere nihil potes.

**Bonus, good, . . . Ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori.**

Iūcundus, *amusing*, . Tuae litterae mihi gratae iucundaeque  
sunt.

190. *Ablative with Adjectives.*

- Vacuus, *void*, . . Ablative. Nihil insidiis vacuum video.  
Ablative with *ab*. Animus vacuus ab omni cura.
- Plenus, *full*, . . Ablative. Ex tuis litteris plenus sum expectatione de Pompeio.  
Genitive. Omnia honesta plena gaudiorum sunt.  
Cilix, libertus tuus, mihi reddidit a te litteras, plenas amoris et officii.
- Dives, *rich*, . . Ablative. Dives agris, dives positus in fenore nummis, *Rich in land, rich in money put out at interest.*—HOR.  
Genitive. Dives pecoris, *Rich in cattle.*—VIRG.
- Libër, *free*, . . Ablative. Robustus animus omni est liber cura, *A stout heart is free from all care.*—CIC.  
Liber nubibus aether, *A cloudless sky.*—LUCAN.  
Ablative with *ab*. Haec loca sunt ab arbitris libera, *These places are free from spies.*—CIC.  
Genitive. Liber laborum, *Free from toils.*—HOR.
- Nudus, *devoid*, . . Ablative. Urbs nuda praesidio, *A city without a garrison.*—CIC.  
Ablative with *ab*. Civitas ab omnibus rebus vacua atque nuda.
- Fessus, *weary*, . . Ablative. Plorando fessus sum.—CIC.  
Fessus curaque viaque, *Weary with toil and travel.*—OV.

Dignus, *worthy*, . Si canimus silvas, silvae sint consule dignae,  
*If we sing of woods, let the woods be worthy*  
*of a consul.*—VIRG.

Haec est digna tuis, Germanice, porta triumphis, *This gate, Germanicus, is worthy of your triumphs.*—MART.

Indignus, *unworthy*, Nulla vox est ab iis audita populi Romani maiestate indigna.—CAES.

Contentus, *satisfied*, Non patriis contentus filius arvis.—VIRG.

Frētus, *relying on*, Fretus iuventa. Fretus armis.—VIRG.

Praeditus, *endued*, Q. Hortensius summis ornamentis honoris, fortunae, virtutis, ingenii praeditus.

191. The nouns opus and usus, signifying *need*, take an ablative of the thing needed—

Auro opus fuit, *He had need of gold.*—CIC.

Apud Terentiam gratia opus est nobis tua, tuaque auctoritate, *I need your influence and authority with Terentia.*

Nunc viribus usus, *Now you must put forth your strength.*—VIRG.

192. Past participles implying *birth* or *origin*, as natus, genitus, ortus, are found with an ablative depending on them—

Natus, . Natus et ipse Dea.—VIRG.

Gēnitus, . Haec ait et Maia genitum demittit ab alto.—VIRG.  
 Dis genite, et geniture Deos.—VIRG.

Ortus, . Loco obscuro tenuique fortuna ortus.—LIV.

Ortus serva, *The son of a female slave.*—LIV.

Numae Pompilii regis nepos filia ortus Ancus Marcius erat.—LIV.

NOTE.—The ablative usually depends in prose on the prepositions *ab*, *ex*, *de*—

A parentibus parvus sum procreatus, a vobis natus sum consularis.—CIC.

Constat plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis.—CAES.

Pater eius ex concubina ortus erat.—SALL.

Qui de Dea matre est, Deus sit necesse est.—CIC.

Genitus is a poetic word.

### 3. CASES DEPENDING ON CERTAIN VERBS.

193. It was stated in § 14 that one of the forms of the Simple Sentence is

Subject + Copula + Predicate ;

and in § 45, that the forms of the Copula, *is*, *are*, *was*, etc., are supplied in Latin by parts of the verb *Esse*, *to be*.

Now other verbs, such as those that imply *becoming*, *being named*, *appointed*, and the like, may stand in Latin as the Copula, and the Predicate will be in the same case as the Subject: examples are—

*Fio*, *become*, . . . Brevis esse laboro,

Obscurus fio.—HOR.

*Evādo*, *turn out*, . In dicendo pauci digni nomine evadunt.

*Appellor*, *be named*, Deiotarus rex ab Senatu appellatus est.

*Nascor*, *be born*, . Nemo nascitur dives.

*Creor*, *be appointed*, Consules creantur Caesar et Servilius.

*Vōcor*, *be called*, . Meus pater fuit Antimachus : ego vocor

Lyconides.—PLAUT.

*Hābeor*, *be reckoned*, Themistocles, cum in epulis recusaret lyram, est habitus indoctor.

#### *Accusative with Verbs.*

194. Many transitive verbs require a second accusative to complete their meaning in a sentence : instances are—

- Facio, *make*, . . . Me tibi hostem fecisti.  
 Testamento fecit heredem filiam.
- Creo, *make*, . . . Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit.
- Puto, *deem*, . . . Te iudicem aequum puto.
- Iū dico, *esteem*, . . . Te virum iudico.
- Iūbeo, *appoint*, . . . Tullum Hostilium regem populus iussit.
- Dico, *name*, . . . Roma patrem patriae Ciceronem libera  
 dixit.—JUV.
- Scribo, *appoint (in writing)*, Cyrus testamentum palam fecit, et  
 me heredem scripsit.

195. Some verbs of asking, teaching, and concealing take two accusatives—

- Rogo, *ask*, . . . Nunquam divitias deos rogavi.—MART.  
 Hoc te vehementer rogo.—CIC.
- Posco, *demand*, . . . Pacem te poscimus omnes.—VIRG.
- Dōceo, *teach*, . . . Numa Pompilius cives suos cultum deorum  
 docuit.
- Cēlo, *conceal*, . . . Non celavi te sermonem hominum.
- Pēto, *seek*, . . . Ranae regem petierunt Iovem.—PHAEDR.

NOTE.—In prose *peto* is usually followed by *a* or *ab*, with an ablative of the person to whom the request is made—

Clodius a me petivit ut Laodiceam irem.

196. Intransitive verbs, expressing a feeling or action, frequently take an accusative of a noun which is either from the same root or of like signification, and which is therefore called the *Cognate Accusative*—

- Vitam tutiorem meo praesidio vivent.
- Vicimus, O socii, et magnam pugnāvimus pugnam.
- Vitam deorum vivimus.
- Mirum somniavi somnium.—PLAUT.



197. An accusative follows some verbs, and especially Past Participles and Adjectives, defining more fully the *Part Affected*.

This construction is chiefly found in poetry and in prose after the time of Cicero—

Ingemit et tremit artus, *He groans and quivers throughout his frame.*—LUCR.

Os humerosque deo similis, *In face and shoulders like a god.*  
—VIRG.

Floribus atque apio crines ornatus amaro, *His hair adorned with flowers and bitter parsley.*—VIRG.

Cicero has *ceterum laetus*, *light-hearted in other respects*, and Horace has *cetera laetus* with the same meaning; Livy has *vir*, *cetera egregius*, and *regnum*, *cetera egregium*.

This is called the Accusative of Limitation.

#### *Genitive with Verbs.*

198. Verbs of accusing and condemning take an accusative of the person charged and a genitive of the offence laid to his charge—

Accuso, *accuse*, . . Cicero Verrem avaritiae nimiae accusavit.  
Inculco, *accuse*, . . Qui alterum inculcat probri, eum ipsum se  
intueri oportet.

Arguo, *accuse*, . . Nonne intelligis quales viros mortuos  
summi sceleris arguas?

Damno, *convict*, . . Parce tuum vatem sceleris damnare,  
Cupido.—OV.

Condemno, *condemn*, Ceteros non dubitabo primum inertiae  
condemnare, post etiam impudentiae.

Convinco, *prove guilty*, Te convinco non inhumanitatis solum,  
sed etiam amentiae.

So also the genitive of the charge is used when the verb is in the passive—

Miltiades accusatus est proditiōis.

Themistocles absens proditiōis est damnatus.

199. *Egeo, I need, and indigeo, I need, take a genitive or an ablative of the thing needed—*

*Gravitas morbi facit ut medicinae egeamus.—CIC.*

*Virtus plurimae exercitationis indiget.—CIC.*

*Integer vitae, scelerisque purus,*

*Non eget Mauri iaculis neque arcu.—HOR.*

*Nunc te cohortatione non puto indigere.—CIC.*

200. *Misereor, I pity, and miseresco, I pity, take a genitive of the object of pity.*

*Miseror, I pity, takes an accusative—*

*Extremam hanc oro veniam : miserere sororis.—VIRG.*

*At vos, O superi, et divum tu maxime rector*

*Iuppiter, Arcadii, quaeso, miserescite regis.—VIRG.*

*Num lacrimas victus dedit, aut miseratus amantem est?*

*—VIRG.*

201. *Memini, I remember, reminiscor, I remember, and obliviscor, I forget, take a genitive or an accusative—*

*Ipse iubet mortis te meminisse Deus.—MART.*

*Memini numeros, si verba tenerem.—VIRG.*

*Vivorum memini, nec mortuorum oblivisci possum.—CIC.*

*Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.—VIRG.*

*Lenibant curas, et corda oblita laborum.—VIRG.*

*Memini nec unquam obliviscar noctis illius.—CIC.*

*Obliviscor iam iniurias, Clodia, depono memoriam doloris mei.—CIC.*

*Est proprium stultitiae aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.—CIC.*

#### *Dative with Verbs.*

202. The following verbs requiring a dative to complete their meaning are worthy of special notice—

*Credo, trust, . . . O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.*

- Fāveo, *befriend*, . Favebam et reipublicae et dignitati ac gloriae tuae.
- Ignosco, *pardon*, . Hoc ignoscant dii immortales et populo Romano et huic ordini.
- Impĕro, *command*, Imperare sibi maximum imperium est.
- Indulgeo, *favour*, . Huic legioni Caesar praecipue indulserat.
- Invideo, *envy*, . . Invident homines maxime paribus aut inferioribus.
- Nōceo, *injure*, . . Non licet sui commodi causā nocere alteri.
- Oboedio, *obey*, . . Homo naturae oboediens homini nocere non potest.
- Parco, *spare*, . . Marcellus Syracusarum omnibus aedificiis pepercit.
- Pāreo, *obey*, . . Ille patris magni pārĕre pārabat Imperio.—VIRG.
- Persuadeo, *persuade*, Volo te tibi persuadere, mihi neminem esse cariorum te.
- Plāceo, *please*, . Tu mihi sola places, placeam tibi, Cynthia, solus.—PROP.
- Servio, *serve*, . . In hac sententia dicenda non parebo dolori meo, non iracundiae serviam.
- Succurro, *help*, . Tu dea, tu praesens nostro succurre labori.—VIRG.  
Haud ignara mali miseris succurrere disco.—VIRG.

*Ablative with Verbs.*

203. Verbs implying *removal*, as *levo*, *relieve*, *libero*, *set free*, *solvo*, *release*, *spolio*, *deprive*, take an ablative of that from which separation takes place; thus—

Epistula tua me aegritudine levavit.

Libero te metu.

Ego librariorum tuorum culpa libero.

Ego vos solvi curis ceteris.—TER.

Illum victor vita spoliavit Achilles.—VIRG.

But with many such verbs the construction of the ablative with *ab* is more common, as with *abstineo*, *keep off*, *arceo*, *protect*, *keep away*, *prohibeo*, *protect* ; thus—

*Manus a te homines vix abstinere possunt.*

*Natura, non poena, debet arcere homines ab iniuria.*

*Tum tu, Iuppiter, hunc ab urbis moenibus arcebis.*

*Virginem ab armatorum impetu prohibeamus.*

204. *Cāreo*, *be without*, takes an ablative—

*Non habet extremum, caret ergo fine modoque, It has no outside, and therefore is without end and limit.*—*Lucr.*

*Neque nos te fruimur, et tu nobis cares.* .

205. *Impleo*, *compleo*, *fill*, take the ablative generally, but sometimes the genitive. *Repleo*, *fill*, nearly always has the ablative—

*Neptunus ventis implevit vela secundis.*—*Virg.*

*Implentur veteris Bacchi, pinguisque ferinae.*—*Virg.*

*Magnis clamoribus omnia complent.*—*Lucr.*

*Convivium vicinorum quotidie compleo.*—*Cic.*

*Comites, accedite, dixit :*

*Et mecum vestros flore replete sinus.*—*Ov.*

206. *Circumdo*, *surround*, has two constructions—

(1.) *Aggere et fossis et muro circumdat urbem, He encloses the city with a mound and trenches and a wall.*—*Liv.*

(2.) *Sua fraterno circumdat brachia collo, She casts her arms around her brother's neck.*—*Ov.*,

where *collo* is the dative.

#### 4. *The Ablative Absolute.*

207. The *circumstances* attending an action are usually expressed in Latin by the ablative. Such circumstances as the *time* or *cause* of the action are very frequently expressed by a

Participle combined with a Noun, both standing in the ablative: thus—

Fuso ingenti hostium exercitu, Servius Romam rediit,  
*After having routed a vast army of the enemy, Servius came back to Rome.*

Uno die intermisso, Galli media nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestris munitiones accedunt, *Having allowed one day to pass, the Gauls, sallying forth silently from their camp at midnight, approach the entrenchments in the plain.*

Occasionally an adjective and a noun, or two nouns, are found in this construction: thus—

Bruto vivo, *While Brutus is living;*

Te duce, *With you as leader;*

Te consule, *In your consulship;*

and very frequently in such phrases as—

L. Aemilio Paulo, C. Licinio consulibus, *During the consulship of Lucius Aemilius Paulus and Caius Licinius.*

This construction is called *The Ablative Absolute*, because the words are not connected with the main construction of the sentence in which they appear.

The following are examples:—

Munitis castris duas ibi legiones Caesar reliquit.

Gabiis receptis, Tarquinius pacem cum Aequorum gente fecit.

Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.

Solon et Pisistratus Servio Tullio regnante viguerunt.

Viget animus in somnis, iacente et mortuo paene corpore.

Vastatis omnibus hostium agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit.

Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum conveniunt.

Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit.

Incredibile est omnium civium, latronibus exceptis, odium in Antonium.

Te veniente die, te decedente canebat.—VIRG.

Iove tonante, fulgurante, comitia populi habere nefas.

### 5. Genitive with Adverbs.

208. Many adverbs have a genitive, called *Partitive*, depending on them—

Satis eloquentiae, *Eloquence enough.*

Parum sapientiae, *But little wisdom.*

Ubi gentium, *Where in the world.*

Quo locorum, *In what place.*

Ubi terrarum, *Where in the world.*

Unquam gentium, *Anywhere in the world.*

So also have many neuter adjectives and pronouns—

Multum, . Multum diei processerat, *The day was far spent.*

Plus, . . Non plus animi quam fidei, *No more courage than fidelity.*

Tantum, . Tantum temporis, *As long.*

Minus, . . Minus praedae, *Less booty.*

Id, . . . Id aetatis iam sumus, *We are now at such a time of life.*

Quid novi affers, *What news do you bring?*

Aliud negotii nihil habemus, *We have no other business in hand.*

NOTE.—The Datives of the Personal Pronouns are frequently used to express that the person has some peculiar interest in the action: they are called *Ethic Datives* or *Conversational Datives*.

Quid mihi Celsus agit? *I would fain know how Celsus fares.*—HOR.

Tu mihi apud exercitum fueris tot annos? *Am I to have you spending all those years in military service?*—CIC.

## PART V.

### PREPOSITIONS.

#### COMPLETE LIST OF PREPOSITIONS.

209. Many of the passages illustrating the meanings of the prepositions are taken from the First Book of Caesar's *Gallie War*. C. P. stands for Common Phrase.

#### *Prepositions with Accusative.*

Ad, (*proceeding*) to, . . . Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt.  
at, . . . . . Diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam  
Rhodani omnes conveniant.  
Pontem qui erat ad Genevam iubet  
rescindi.

(*up*) to, . . . . . Ad numerum quattuor millium.

for, . . . . . Res quae ad bellum usui sunt.

C. P. Ad me, to my house, at my house. Omnes ad  
unum, all, to a man.

Adversus, { *facing towards*, Impetum adversus montem in  
cohortes faciunt.  
Adversum, { *in respect of*, . . . Pietas est iustitia adversum deos.

C. P. Adversum leges, in opposition to the laws. Adversum  
republicam.

Antē, in front of, . . . Clodius ante suum fundum Miloni  
insidias collocavit.

before (time), . . . Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitus  
populi Romani Galliae fines erat  
egressus.

C. P. Ante lucem, before daybreak. Ante diem tertium  
Nonas, the third day before the Nones.

Āpūd, <i>near,</i>	. . . .	Caesar apud Corfinium castra posuit.
<i>at the house of,</i>	.	Eo die casu apud Pompeium cenavi.
<i>in the presence of,</i>		Apud populum orationem habuit, <i>he spoke before the people.</i>
<i>among,</i>	. . . .	Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat.
		Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix.

C. P. Apud me, *in my house.* Apud Platonem, *in (the writings of) Plato.*

Circum,	} <i>around,</i>	. . .	{	Templa, quae circum forum sunt.
Circā,				} <i>place,</i>

Circiter,	{	<i>about,</i>	. . .	{	Circiter meridiem exercitum Caesar
Circā,					<i>time,</i>
					Postero die circa eandem horam
					copias admovit.—LIV.

Cis,	{	<i>on this side of,</i>	{	Hostis cis Euphratem fuit.
Citrā,				Citra flumen, <i>on this side of the river.</i>

Contrā, <i>against,</i>	. . . .	Nihil unus potest contra multos.
		Scio me a te contra inimicos meos solere defendi.

C. P. Contra naturam, *unnatural.* Contra spem omnium, *contrary to general expectation.*

Ergā, <i>towards,</i>	. . . .	Meum erga te benevolentiam facile perspicias.
-----------------------	---------	---

Extrā, <i>beyond,</i>	. . . .	Extra portam Collinam aedes Honoris est.
-----------------------	---------	--

C. P. Extra ordinem, *with extraordinary powers:* thus, Plurima bella Cn. Pompeio extra ordinem sunt commissa.

In, <i>into,</i>	. . . . .	Caesar in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit.
------------------	-----------	--

<i>into,</i>	. . . . .	Gallia est omnis divisa in tres partes.
--------------	-----------	---

<i>upon,</i>	. . . . .	In hostes milites nostri impetum fecerunt.
--------------	-----------	--



- In, *among*, . . . . . Helvetii sese fugae mandarunt atque  
in proximas silvas abdiderunt.  
over, . . . . . Vitae necisque in suos habent potes-  
tatem.  
in respect of, . . . . . Helvetiorum fines in longitudinem  
milia passuum cccxl, in latitudinem  
clxxx patebant.

C. P. In perpetuum, *for ever*.

In singulos dies, *day by day*.

Mirum in modum, *to a marvellous extent*.

In matrimonium ducere, *to marry (a wife)*.

In matrimonium dare, *to give (a daughter) in marriage*.

- Infra, *below*, . . . . . Sapiens res humanas despicit atque  
infra se positas arbitratur.  
less than, . . . . . Uri (buffaloes) sunt magnitudine  
paulo infra elephantos.  
later than, . . . . . Homerus non infra Lycurgum fuit.

- Inter, *between*, . . . . . Rhodanus fluit inter fines Helveti-  
orum et Allobrogum.  
during, . . . . . Germani inter annos xiv. tectum non  
subierant.  
one to another, . . . . . Sequani et Helvetii obsides inter sese  
dant; Sequani, ne itinere Hel-  
vetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine  
maleficio et iniuria transeant.  
one from another, . . . . . Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus  
inter se differunt.

C. P. Constat inter omnes, *all are agreed*.

Pueri inter se amant, *the boys love one another*.

Nos inter nos amemus, *let us love one another*.

- Intra, *within*, . . . . . Helvii intra oppida murosque com-  
pelluntur.

Intrā, *within*, . . . . Antiochus intra montem Taurum  
regnare iussus est.

Intra decimum diem quam Pheras  
venerat, *not more than ten days*  
*after his arrival at Pherae.*

NOTE.—Though you may write intra Urbem, you must not  
write intra Romam: thus the expression, *neither out*  
*of Rome nor in Rome*, is to be rendered, *neque extra*  
*Romam neque Romae.*

Iuxtā, *close to*, . . . . Atticus est sepultus iuxta viam Ap-  
pianam ad quintum lapidem.

Caesar iuxta murum castra posuit.

*closely allied to*, . . . . Velocitas iuxta formidinem, cunctatio  
propior constantiae est.

Ob, *before*, . . . . Mors, exsilium mihi ob oculos versa-  
bantur.

*on account of*, . . . . Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam  
fecerat T. Labienum legatum prae-  
fecit.

Quam ob rem, *for which reason.*

C. P. Ob metum, *through fear.* Ob rem, *advantageously.*

NOTE.—The adverb obviam, often written as an adverbial  
phrase, ob viam, is very frequently used with a dative  
in the sense of *to meet*—

Tironem Dolabellae obviam misi.

Caesari ex Hispania redeunti obviam longissime  
processisti.

Pēnēs, *in the hands of*, . . . . Servi centum dies penes accusatorem  
fuerunt.

Eloquentia eos ornat, penes quos est.

Me penes est unum vasti custodia  
mundi.—Ov.

C. P. Penes te culpa est, *the fault lies with you.*—TER.  
 Penes te es? *are you in your senses?*—HOR.

Per, *through*, . . . Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via.  
 Per Alpes, *over the Alps.*  
 Per forum, *across the forum.*  
 Per noctem, *throughout the night.*

*by means of*, . . . Mirifice mihi et per se, et per Pompeium, blanditur Appius.  
 Decima legio per tribunos militum  
 Caesari gratias egit quod de se  
 optimum iudicium fecisset.  
 Helvetii iter per provinciam per vim  
 tentabant.  
 Nunquam per M. Antonium quietus  
 fui.

*by*, in oaths and adjurations. Per Deos, *by the Gods.*  
 Per dexteram te istam oro.  
 Per ea, quae tibi dulcissima sunt in  
 vita, miserere nostri.  
 Per ego te deos oro.—TER.  
 Per omnes te deos oro.—HOR.

C. P. Si per te liceat, *if you will allow me.*  
 Per litteras, *by letter.*  
 Per tempus, *opportunistly.*

Pone, *behind*, . . . Pone nos recede.

Post, *behind*, . . . Post equitem sedet atra cura.—HOR.  
 Manibus post tergum illigatis, *with  
 hands bound behind his back.*—LIV.

*after*, . . . Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilo minus  
 Helvetii id quod constituerant  
 facere conantur, ut e finibus suis  
 exirent.

C. P. Post urbem conditam, *after the foundation of the city.*  
 Post hominum memoriam, *within the memory of man.*

Praeter, *alongside of*, . . . Postridie eius diei praeter castra  
 Caesaris suas copias produxit.  
*beyond*, . . . Aristides expulsus est patria, quod  
 praeter modum iustus esset.  
*except*, . . . Allobroges Caesari demonstrant sibi  
 praeter agri solum nihil esse reli-  
 qui.  
 Amicum ex consularibus neminem  
 tibi esse video praeter Lucullum.

C. P. Praeter opinionem, *unexpectedly.* Praeter spem,  
*unexpectedly.*

Prŏpě, *near*, . . . Bacillum prope me ponitote, *be sure*  
*to put a stick by my side.*  
 Hostes prope muros castra habent.  
*about*, . . . Prope Calendas Sextiles puto me  
 Laodiceae fore.

C. P. Prope a Sicilia, *close to Sicily.*

Propter, *close to*, . . . Fluvius Eurotas propter Lacedaemo-  
 nem fluit.  
*on account of*, . . . Propter frigora frumenta in agris  
 matura non erant.  
 Decimae legionī propter virtutem con-  
 fidebat Caesar maxime.  
 Sapiens legibus non propter metum  
 paret, sed quia id salutare maxime  
 iudicat.

Secundum, *after*, . . . Itē secundum me.—PLAUT.  
*next to*, . . . Secundum te nihil mihi amicus est  
 solitudine.  
*according to*, . . . Secundum naturam vivamus.

Süb, *under*, . . . . Mittere sub iugum, *to send under the yoke.*

up to, . . . . Helvetii sub primam nostram aciem successerunt, *the Helvetii forced their way up to our first line.*

C. P. Sub noctem, *at nightfall.* Sub ortum lucis, *at day-break.*

Subter, *under*, . . . . Virtus omnia subter se habet.

In poetry, Subter has sometimes the ablative.

Süper, *over*, . . . . Super vallum se præcipitantur, *they cast themselves over the entrenchment.*  
Vespasianus super cenam multa ioco transigebat, *Vespasian indulged in many pleasantries over his dinner.*

beyond, . . . . Super omnia, *beyond all else.*  
Super hæc, *over and above this.*

Süprâ, *above*, . . . . Carthaginensium caesa eo die supra milia viginti.

Supra vires, *above one's means.*—HOR.

Trans, *across*, . . . . Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt. Caelum, non animum, mutant qui trans mare currunt.—HOR.

Ultrâ, *beyond*, . . . . Caesar paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit.

C. P. Ultra fidem, *marvellously.*

Versus, *towards*, . . . . Cum Brundisium versus ires ad Caesarem, *when you were on your way to Brundisium to join Caesar.*

210. *Prepositions with Ablative.*

A, ab, abs, *proceeding from*, Aeneas ab Sicilia classe ad Italiam venit.

*from*, . . . Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dividit.

*away from*, . . . Caesar suos a praelio continebat.

*after*, . . . Hanc urbem Aeneas ab nomine uxoris Lavinium appellat.

*on the side of*, . . . Pars Galliae attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum.

*in respect of*, . . . Sumus imparati, cum a militibus, tum a pecunia, *We are unprepared both in respect of fighting men and also of money.*

*by*, . . . Laetus sum laudari me abs te, laudato viro.

C. P. A puero, *from boyhood*. A tergo, *in the rear*.

A fronte, *in front*. A dextro cornu, *on the right wing*.

Absque, *without*, . . . Absque te esset, *had it not been for you*.

Clam, *unknown to*, . . . Non clam me est, tibi me esse suspectam.—TER.

Sibi clam vobis salutem fugā petivit.

*Clam* is found with various cases, thus—

Clam patris. Clam hostibus. Clam uxorem. Clam mihi.

Cōram, *in the presence of*, . . . Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator.—JUV.

Ne pueros coram populo Medea trucidet.—HOR.

- Cum, *with*, . . . . . Servum cum his ad te litteris misi.  
 Magno cum metu incipio dicere.  
 Has spes cogitationesque secum  
 portantes urbem ingressi sunt.  
 Bellum cum Latinis gessit.  
 Cum febris domum rediit.
- C. P. Cum prima luce, *at daybreak*. Cum silentio, *silently*.  
 Magno cum gemitu civitatis, *to the great sorrow of the state*.
- Dē, *down from*, . . . . . De caelo descendere, *to come down from heaven*.  
 Cadunt altis de montibus umbrae.  
 —VIRG.
- up from, . . . . . Surgere de terra nebulas aestum-  
 que videmus.—LUCR.
- away from, . . . . . Civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis  
 cum omnibus copiis exirent.
- (out) of, . . . . . Pauci de nostris cadunt.  
 Unus de illis. Una de multis.
- concerning, . . . . . Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii cer-  
 tiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum  
 mittunt.  
 Ego te de rebus illis non audiam.
- at, . . . . . De tertia vigilia.
- for, . . . . . Multis de causis.
- C. P. De novo, *anew*. De industria, *purposely*.
- E, ex, *out of*, . . . . . Postero die castra ex eo loco  
 movent.  
 Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis  
 captus est.  
 Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam  
 dicere coegerunt.
- from, . . . . . Ex Crasso audiui, cum diceret. . . .
- C. P. Ex equo, *on horseback*. Ex tempore, *on the spur of the moment*. Ex more, *in accordance with custom*.

Ex occulto, *secretly*. Una ex parte, *on one side*.

Magna ex parte, *to a great extent*.

In, *in*, . . . . . Lucretiam sedentem maestam in cubiculo inveniunt.

Lentulus totus est in Pompeii potestate.

on, . . . . . Servius Tullius templum Dianae cum Latinis in Aventino fecit.

over, . . . . . Darius rex Persarum pontem in flumine Istro fecit.

C. P. In honore, *highly esteemed*. In pretio, *highly valued*.

Palam, *in the presence of*, . . . . . Palam populo, *before the people*.

Prae, *in front of*, . . . . . Chiefly of what is close to the subject of the sentence—

Prae se agens armentum, *driving the herd before him*.

Prae se pugionem ferens, *holding out a dagger*.

in consequence of, . . . . . Non hercule prae lacrimis possum reliqua scribere.

in comparison with, . . . . . Omnia pericula prae salute sua levia duxerunt.

Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevis nostra contemptui est.

Prō, *in front of*, . . . . . Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suis copias produxit.

in behalf of, . . . . . Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.—HOR.

in the place of, . . . . . Unus Cato mihi est pro centum millibus.

Te non pro amico sed pro hoste habebo.



- Prō, *in proportion to*, . . . Nemo fuit qui non me pro suis opibus in illa tempestate defend-  
erit.
- in return for*, . . . Ego te pro istis dictis et factis  
ulciscar.—TER.
- Prōcūl, *far*, . . . is used with and without *ab*—  
Procul ab omni metu, *far removed*  
    *from all alarm*.  
Procul negotiis, *far away from*  
    *business*.—HOR.
- Simūl, *together*, . . . is used with and without *cum*—  
Tui nominis aeterna memoria simul  
    cum illo templo consecratur.  
Simul his, *together with these*.—  
    HOR.
- Sinē, *without*, . . . Homo sine re, sine fide, sine spe,  
    sine sede, sine fortuna.  
Quid leges sine moribus  
    Vanae proficiunt?—HOR.
- Sūb, *under*, . . . Eodem die Ariovistus castra pro-  
    movit et millibus passuum sex  
    a Caesaris castris sub monte  
    consedit.  
Sub nomine pacis bellum latet.
- Sūper, *above*, . . . Super cervice Damoclis pendebat  
    gladius.
- on*, . . . Hic tamen hanc mecum poteras  
        requiescere noctem  
        Fronde super viridi.—VIRG.
- about*, . . . Haec super arborum cultu pecor-  
        umque canebam,  
        Et super arboribus, Caesar dum  
        magnus ad altum  
Fulminat Euphraten bello.—VIRG.

Tēnūs, *up to*, follows its case, and takes ablative (usually in the singular) or genitive plural—

Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare iussus (est).—CIC.

Et crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.—VIRG.

Notice also hāctenus, *hitherto*, and eātenus, *thus far*.

### *Prepositions in Composition.*

211. When words are joined in Latin to make a compound word, two changes are often made in them—

1. The final letter of the first part of the compound is changed to harmonise with the first letter of the second part.
2. The vowel in the first syllable of the second part is changed into another lower in the descending scale of vowel-strength, *a, o, u, e, i*.

Thus *ad* + *capiō* becomes *accipio*.

The following lists are intended to illustrate the force and effect of prepositions in composition.

*A, ab, abs*, usually with the sense of *separation*—

*amitto*, *let go, lose*.

*avoco*, *call away*.

*abduco*, *lead away*.

*abicio (iacio)*, *throw away*.

*abstrudo*, *thrust away*.

*abscondo*, *hide away*.

*Ad*, usually with the sense of *to* or *at*—

*accido (cado)*, *happen*.

*appareo*, *appear*.

*addo*, *put to, add*.

*arripio (rapio)*, *seize*.

*acquiesco*, *rest*.

*annuo*, *assent*.

NOTE.—We often find *adpareo*, *adripio*, *adnuo*, etc.

*Circum*, *around*—

*circundo*, *surround*.

*circumscribo*, *close round, cheat*.

*Cum, together, thoroughly—*

Changed to *com, con, and*, before vowels and *n*, to *co*.

*committo, put together.*

*compello, drive together.*

*conecto, bind together.*

*conservo, preserve completely.*

*coerceo (arceo), restrain.*

*cōgo (āgo), compel.*

*De, down, away—*

*decido (cādo), fall down.*

*decēdo (cēdo), retire.*

*deicio (iacio), cast down.*

*deripio (rapio), snatch away.*

*deprimo (premo), press down.*

*descendo (scando), come down.*

*E, ex, out—*

*excido (caedo), cut out.*

*edūco, lead out.*

*exhibeo (habeo), put forward.*

*ecicio (iacio), cast out.*

*exeo, go forth.*

*excludo (claudio), shut out.*

*In, into, on—*

*includo (claudio), shut in.*

*importo, carry in.*

*inspicio (specio), examine.*

*irrideo, smile on.*

*immitto, send in.*

*illabor, glide in.*

NOTE.—We often find *importo, inrideo, inlabor*.

*Inter, between—*

*interdico, forbid.*

*intericio (iacio), throw between.*

*intellego (lego), make a choice between.*

*interimo (emo), perish.*

*Ob, over, against, down—*

*occurro, meet.*

*officio (facio), obstruct.*

*omitto (mitto), let go.*

*obtineo (teneo), maintain.*

*ostendo (tendo), expose to view.*

*obicio (iacio), present.*

*Per, through, completely—*

*percipio (capio), perceive.*

*perfero, carry out.*

*permitto, intrust.*

*perpetior (patior), endure patiently.*

*perficio (facio), carry out.*

*persuadeo, persuade.*

*Post, after—*

*posthabeo, esteem less.*

*postpono, regard as inferior.*

*Prae, before—*

*precipio (capio), preoccupy.*

*praeicio (facio), set over.*

*praegredior (gradior), go before.*

*praesideo (sedeo), preside over.*

*Praeter, past—*praetereo, *pass by.*praeteregreior, *step beyond.**Pro, forward—*prōdo, *put forward.*prōfiteor (fateor), *profess.*prōficio, *advance.*prohibeo (habeo), *prevent.*prōgreior (gradior), *proceed.*prodeo (eo), *go forward.**Sub, under, up from below, in an underhand way, gently—*subicio (iacio), *put under.*suscipio (capiō), *take up.*supprimo (premo), *suppress.*sustineo (teneo), *hold up.*surripio (rapio), *take stealthily.*subrideo, *smile slightly.**Trans, across, over—*transigo (ago), *despatch.*transfigo, *transfix.*traduco, } *lead over.*trado, } *hand over.*

transduco, }

transdo, }

*Inseparable Particles.*

212. In a large number of compound verbs the inseparable particles *Dis-* and *Re-*, and in a small number, *Ambi-*, appear.

*Dis- or Di-, apart, asunder—*discedo, *depart.*diruo, *destroy.*discerno, *distinguish.*dissimulo, *pretend not to be.*dirīmo (emo), *divide.*dissocio, *disunite.*

Notice also dignosco, *distinguish*, dirigo, *keep straight*, diligo, *pick out, esteem, love.*

*Re-, back, again—*reicio (iacio), *keep back.*reīpio, *take back.*rēdeo (eo), *go back.*reddo, *give back.*rēvōco, *call back.*rēnōvo, *renew.*

Notice also resigno, *unseal*, and hence cancel.

*Ambi-, around—*ambio, *go round, canvass.*amplector, *embrace.*

## PART VI.

### DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

#### SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

213. The mood of the verb in a *Subordinate* sentence does not depend on the conjunction by which that sentence is linked to the *principal* sentence, but on the principles that the Indicative is the mood of *Fact* and *Independent Statement*, and the Subjunctive is the mood of *Conception* and *Dependent Statement*. Hence—

1. If the Subordinate clause states a *conception* and not a *fact*, the Subjunctive is used.
2. If the Subordinate clause is grammatically *dependent* on the principal clause, the Subjunctive is used.

#### I. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS (§ 115).

214. Ut or Uti, Ne, Quo, Quin, Quominus.

These conjunctions, in sentences expressing the *end* or *object* of an action, are followed by the Subjunctive, partly because a purpose is a mental *conception*, and partly because the clause expressing the purpose is grammatically *dependent* on the principal clause; thus—

Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur.

Régulus ad supplicium est profectus ut fidem hosti datam conservaret.

Ego vos, quo pauca monerem, advocavi; simul uti causam mei consilii aperirem.

Romani ab aratro abduxerunt Cincinnatum, ut imperator esset.

Cave ne hoc facias.

Quid obstat mihi quominus sim beatus?

Hortensius non dubitavit quin Sullam defenderet.

Caesar ad Lingonas litteras misit, ne Helvetios frumento iuvarent.

NOTE 1.—After *fac*, *take pains*, *be sure*, *ut* is often omitted.

After *sine*, *permit*, *let*, *ut* is sometimes omitted.

After *cave*, *beware*, *take heed*, *ne* is usually omitted.

Tu nos fac ames.—CIC.

Sine veniat.—TER.

Cave credas.—CIC.

Cave facias.—CIC.

Huc ades; insani feriant sine litora fluctus.—VIRG.

So also *velim scribas* = *I would have you write*.

NOTE 2.—Instead of *et ne* use *neu*—

Orabant ut parceret magistro equitum neu cum eo exercitum damnaret, *They implored (the Dictator) to pardon the Master of the Horse, and not to condemn him, and at the same time the army.*

NOTE 3.—After verbs of *fearing* it is the Latin idiom to use the negative where we omit it, and to omit it where we use it; thus—

Vereor ne veniat = *I fear that he will come.*

Vereor ut veniat = *I fear that he will not come.*

Examples are—

Non vereor ne quid stulte facias.

Non vereor ne non scribendo te expleam.

Vereor ut Dolabella ipse satis vobis prodesse possit.

Ornamenta quae locavi metuo ut possim recipere.—PLAUT.

Omnes labores te excipere video, timeo ut sustineas.

Hoc timet ne deseras se.—TER.

Timeo ne ille dolori atque iracundiae pareat.

NOTE 4.—Notice the following expressions :—

Fieri potest ut fallar = *I may be deceived.*

Dixit fore ut oppidum expugnaretur = *He said the town would be taken.*

This use of *fore ut* with the Subjunctive supplies the place of the Future Infinitive Passive, for which the Latins had no form.

## II. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

215. Ut, *that*. Quin, *but that*.

The verb in a consecutive clause is in the Subjunctive, because the clause expressing the *result* of an action is grammatically *dependent* on the principal clause—

Prima lex in amicitia est ut neque rogemus res turpes, nec faciamus rogati.

Gallinae ex ovis pullos cum excluserint ita tuentur, ut et pennis foveant, ne frigore laedantur.

Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset.

Non dubito quin mirere quod tecum de eadem re saepius agam.

Oppidum natura loci sic muniebatur ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem.

Servius Tullius regnavit quattuor et quadraginta annos ita, ut bono etiam moderatoque succedenti regi difficilis aemulatio esset.

Ego te tanti facio, ut paucos aequo ac te caros habeam.

Facere non possum quin ad te mittam.

Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.

Cicero tantus orator fuit, ut nemo post illum maior fuerit.

Sequitur ut doceam omnia esse subiecta naturae.

Ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

NOTE 1.—In clauses denoting a *purpose*, *ne* is used.

In clauses denoting a *consequence*, *ut non* is used.

Hence to express *that nobody*, *that nothing*, and the like, we have in

FINAL CLAUSES	CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES
ne quis,	ut nemo,
ne quid,	ut nihil,
ne ullus,	ut nullus,
ne unquam.	ut nunquam.

Curavi ne quis Catilinam metueret

Respublica te mihi ita commendavit, ut cariorem habeam neminem.

Senatus decrevit ut darent operam Consules, ne quid respublica detrimenti caperet.

Sic te prosternes, ut nihil inter te atque inter quadrupedem aliquam putes interesse?

Vereor ne consolatio ulla possit vera reperiri.

Ita vivebant ut nullum quaestum turpem arbitrarentur.

Cimon fuit tanta liberalitate, ut nunquam hortis suis custodem imposuerit.

Relligio monet ne unquam fidem fallamus.

The forms *quis* and *quid* are to be closely attached to *ne*.

NOTE 2.—The more emphatic *ut ne* is often used instead of *ne*—

Primum iustitiae munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat.

Ego vos oro atque obsecro, iudices, ut ne hominis miseri, L. Murenæ, recentem gratulationem nova lamentatione obruat.

Tu quam plurimis de rebus ad me velim scribas, ut prorsus ne quid ignorem.



## III. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS.

216. Cum (Quum), Quoniam, *since*. Quandōquidem, Siquidem, *since in fact*. Quod, Quia, *because*.

When these conjunctions introduce statements of *fact*, on which the writer grounds some other statement, they are commonly followed by the Indicative—

Multi legibus non propter metum parent, sed quia id salutare maxime iudicant.

Fas mihi praecipue vultus vidisse Deorum,

Vel quia sum vates, vel quia sacra cano.—Ov.

Fecisti mihi pergratum quod Serapionis librum ad me misisti.

De animo meo erga te bene facis quod non dubitas.

Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub ingum missum, concedendum non putabat.

Quoniam me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi.

Quod, *inasmuch as*, takes the Indicative when the writer vouches for the cause assigned.

Dumnorix Helvetiis erat amicus quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat.

Quod, *on the ground that*, takes the Subjunctive when the writer does not intend to give his personal warranty for the truth of the assigned cause—

Iustam causam affers quod me hoc tempore videre non possis.

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet iuventutem et novas superstitiones induceret.

Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinens.

Decima legio per tribunos militum Caesari gratias egit quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset.

Quia usually gives a personal warranty—

Mutavimus consilium quia de Caesaris adventu nihil audiebamus.

For Cum, see § 136.

Cum, *inasmuch as*, has the Subjunctive when the writer does not vouch for the truth of the assigned cause; thus—

Aedui, cum se suaque ab Helvetiis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.

#### IV. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS.

217. Cum (Quum), Quando, Ubi, Ut, *when*. Antequam, Priusquam, *before that*. Postquam, *after that*. Donec, Dum, *so long as, until*. Quoad, *so long as*. Quoties, *as often as*. Simul, *as soon as*.

Some remarks on this class have been already made in § 136.

All these conjunctions are found with the Indicative and Subjunctive.

When temporal conjunctions are used in expressing merely the order of facts, the Indicative occurs; for example—

Antequam pro Murena dicere instituo, pro me ipse pauca dicam.

Id ego, priusquam loqui coepisti, sensi.

Ante orat quam pluit.

But when an intention that was *never realised* is mentioned, the Subjunctive is used; thus—

Priusquam in oppida multitudo convenire posset, adesse Romanos nunciatur.

Cum, when it is used of a *definite* time, takes the Indicative—

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, *On Caesar's arrival in Gaul*.

But when it refers to *indefinite* parts between two limits of time, it always has the Subjunctive—

Cum Caesar in Gallia esset, *During Caesar's stay in Gaul*.

## V. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

218. Licet, Quamvis, Quamquam, Etsi, Etiamsi, Si, Ut, *although*. Nisi, *unless*. Ni, *unless*.

As a general rule, the Indicative or Subjunctive is used with these conjunctions according as the concession is assumed by the writer as a *fact*, or stated as a mere *conception*.

Quamquam and etsi have usually the Indicative in Cicero, licet and quamvis the Subjunctive. We generally find tamen or certe in the principal clauses—

Quamquam abest a culpa, suspicione tamen non caret.

Etsi mihi nunquam dubium fuit, quin tibi essem carissimus, tamen cotidie magis id perspicio.

Licet omnes in me terrores impendant, subibo.

Ut sit magna tamen certe lenta ira deorum est.—Juv.

Quamvis suasor non fueris protectionis meae, approbator certe fuisti.

Homines, quamvis in turbidis rebus sint, tamen interdum animis relaxantur.

Ut enim rationem Plato nullam adferret, vide quid homini tribuam, ipsa auctoritate me frangeret.

Ut vires absint, tamen est laudanda voluntas.—Ov.

Ego bonos viros sequar, etiamsi ruent.

Tuis opibus, etiamsi timidi essemus, tamen omnem timorem abiceremus.

Omnia sunt misera in bellis civilibus; quae maiores nostri ne semel quidem, nostra aetas saepe iam sensit: sed miserius nihil quam ipsa victoria: quae *etiamsi* ad meliores venit, tamen eos ipsos ferociores impotentioresque reddit; ut, *etiamsi* natura tales non *sint*, necessitate esse cogantur.

Mirum ni domi est.—Ter.

Quod ni ita se haberet, nec iustitiae ullus esset nec bonitatis locus.

Pacem non peterem, nisi utilem crederem.

Nisi ego insanio, stulte omnia agi iudico.

## VI. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

219. Tamquam, Quasi, Velut, *as if*. Ut, *as*. Sicut, Quem-admodum, *just as, precisely as*.

When the comparison is put as an assumed *fact*, the Indicative is used ; when as a mere *conception*, the Subjunctive is used—

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.

Eius causam defendi in Senatu, sicut mea fides postulabat.

Suspectus tamquam ipse suas incenderit aedes, *Looked on with suspicion, as though he set fire to his house with his own hands*.—JUV.

Assimulabo quasi nunc exeam, *I will make a pretence, as if I were just going out*.—TER.

Hac de re, quasi ita esse nescias, taces.

Ita scribit, quasi ego ad eos, non ei ad me venire debuissent.

## VII. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS.

220. Si, *if* (see the next section). Dum, *provided that*. Modo, Dummodo, *if only*.

Of these, Si takes the Indicative or Subjunctive according as the writer states the condition as a *fact* or as a *conception*. The other three imply a mere conception, and take, as a rule, the Subjunctive—

Omnia neglegunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.

Quosdam, valetudo modo bona sit, tenuitas ipsa delectat.

Dum res maneant, verba fingant arbitrato suo.

## ON CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

221. In Conditional Sentences the clause containing the condition is called the Prôtasis (*putting forward*), and that containing the conclusion is called the Apodôsis (*paying back*). The Protasis is regularly introduced by Si.

- I. The Indicative is used in the Protasis, and the Indicative (or Imperative) in the Apodosis, when the condition is stated as a *fact*.
- II. The Subjunctive is used in both clauses when the condition, and therefore the conclusion, are distinctly marked as mere *conceptions*.

Hence we get the following type-forms of Conditional Sentences in common use—

**A.** Suppositions the truth of which is *assumed* by the writer, assumed for argument, but not necessarily believed absolutely—

1. Si vis, potes, *If you have (now) the will, you have the power.*
2. Si voluisti, potuisti, *If you have (or had) the will, you have (or had) the power.*
3. Si voles, poteris, *If you (hereafter) have the will, you will have the power.*
4. Si volueris, poteris, *If you shall have had the will, you will have the power.*

In this group of conditionals, Si may often be translated *since, though, when, assuming that, if (as is the fact)*.

In 1, instead of potes, we may have the Future poteris.

In 4, instead of poteris, we may have potueris.

In 1 and 3 the Imperative may be in the Apodosis.

**B.** Suppositions the non-truth of which is assumed by the writer, assumed for argument, but not necessarily known to be untrue—

1. Si velis, possis, *If you were to have the will, you would have the power.*
2. Si velles, posses, *If you could have the will, you would have the power.*
3. Si voluisses, potuisses, *If you had had the will, you would have had the power.*
4. Si voluisses, posses, *If you had had the will, you would now have the power.*

EXAMPLES.

A.

1. Si vos valetis, nos valemus.—CIC.  
 Si tu exercitusque valetis, bene est.—CIC.  
 Erras, tui animi si me esse ignarum putas.—TER.  
 Ea si vivit annos nata est sedecim.—TER.  
 Si ut scribis ita sentis, non magis te quam de te iudicium  
 reprehendo meum.—CIC.  
 Si vincimus, omnia nobis tuta erunt.—SALL.  
 Si me diligis, ad me litteras mittito.—CIC.
2. Si peccavi, insciens feci.—TER.  
 Hoc si qui pati non potuit, mori debuit.—CIC.
3. Si me audies, vitabis inimicitias.—CIC.  
 Dicam, si potero.—HOR.  
 Numquam labere, si te audies.—CIC.  
 Male si mandata loqueris,  
 Aut dormitabo aut ridebo.—HOR.  
 Si non unius, quaeso, miserere duorum :  
 Si vivet, vivam ; si cadet illa, cadam.—TIB.  
 Si quaeret quid agam, dic . . .—HOR.
4. Si quid egero, faciam ut scias.—CIC.  
 Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;  
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.—OV.  
 Si te rogavero, nonne respondebis?—CIC.  
 Gratissimum mihi feceris, si ad me in Ciliciam quam  
 primum veneris.—CIC.

B.

1. Omnia nunc rident ; at si formosus Alexis  
 Montibus his abeat, videas et flumina sicca.—VIRG.  
 Where si abeat means *if he should be absent*, and videas  
 means *you would see*.  
 Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, *If you were in my place you*  
*would have a different opinion.*

Fraxinus in silvis pulcherrima, pinus in hortis,  
 Populus in fluviis, abies in montibus altis ;  
 Saepius at si me, Lycida formose, revisas,  
 Fraxinus in silvis cedat tibi, pinus in hortis.—VIRG.

Populum si caedere saxis  
 Incipias servosque tuos quos aere pararis,  
 Insanum te omnes pueri clamentque puellae.—HOR.

2. Si foret in terris rideret Democritus.—JUV.

Si tibi nulla sitim finiret copia lymphae,  
 Narrares medicis.—HOR.

Non possem vivere, nisi in litteris viverem.—CIC.

3. Quid tu fecisses, si te Tarentum misissem ?—CIC.

Si bellum hoc, si hic hostis, si ille rex contemendus  
 fuisset, neque tanta cura senatus et populus Romanus  
 suscipiendum putasset, neque tot annos gessisset.—CIC.

Semper mihi rectum consilium dedisti, cui si auscultassem,  
 ex felicissimis fuisset.—CIC.

4. Ego vero, iudices, ipse me existimarem nefarium si amico  
 defuissem.—CIC.

Si me audissent, viverent.—CIC.

Si mihi nunc de rebus gestis esset nostri exercitus impera-  
 torisque dicendum, plurima et maxima praelia com-  
 memorare possem.—CIC.

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI.

222. Notice the following uses of the Relative :—

1. To define a word in a sentence.
2. To qualify a sentence by introducing a Final, Con-  
 secutive, or Causal clause.
3. To connect sentences.

1. A relative clause, qualifying a word or phrase, is called an *Adjectival Clause*, because it performs the office of an *Adjective*. The verb in such a clause is naturally in the *Indicative*, because a *fact* is stated ; thus—

Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat.

Ille est vir, qui nos extorres expulit patria.

Omnes homines, qui de rebus dubiis consultant, ab odio, amicitia, ira atque misericordia vacuos esse decet.

Omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt.

Prope oblitus sum, quod maxime fuit scribendum.

Imperium Graeciae fuit penes Athenienses, Atheniensium potiti sunt Spartiatae, Spartiatae superavere Thebani, Thebanos Macedones vicerunt, qui ad imperium Graeciae brevi tempore adiunxerunt Asiam bello subactam.

Galli deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam.

Haud facile emergunt, quorum virtutibus obstat  
Res angusta domi.—Juv.

Mihi omnium, quibus praesum, salus, liberi, fama, fortunae, sunt carissimae.

Timeo ne C. Verres omnia, quae fecit, impune fecerit.

Obest plerumque iis, qui discere volunt, auctoritas eorum, qui se docere profitentur ; desinunt enim suum iudicium adhibere.

2. In clauses of this kind, which are called *Adverbial*, the verb is in the *Subjunctive* mood, for the reasons given in the remarks on the construction of sentences introduced by *Final*, *Consecutive*, and *Causal Conjunctions* : examples are—



**FINAL, . .** Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium ab senatu peterent, misere, *The men of Clusium sent envoys to Rome to beg for aid from the Senate.*

Caesar praemittit ad Boios qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneat atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant.

Lacedaemonii, devictis Atheniensibus, triginta viros imposuere, qui rempublicam tractarent.

**CONSECUTIVE,** Non ego is sum, qui mortis periculo teneor, *I am not a man to be restrained by the risk of death.*

**CAUSAL, . .** Magna est Pelopis culpa, qui non erudierit filium, *Pelops is greatly to blame for not instructing his son.*

**NOTE.**—Non ego sum, qui . . . meaning, I am not *a* man to . . . , or, I am not *the kind of* man to . . . takes the Subjunctive.

Non ego sum, qui . . . meaning, I am not *the* man who . . . takes the Indicative.

Compare, for example, the following passages taken from the same pages of Cicero and Livy :—

Ego is sum qui nihil unquam mea potius, quam meorum civium causa fecerim.

Ego sum, qui nullius vim plus valere volui, quam honestum otium.—CIC.

Ista sententia ea est, quae neque amicos parat nec inimicos tollit.

Ea est Romana gens, quae victa quiescere nesciat.—LIVY.

So again—

Ego sum ille consul, cui non forum, non campus, non domus vacua periculo fuit.—CIC.

Habetis eum consulem, qui parere vestris decretis non dubitet.—CIC.

3. The relative often stands at the commencement of a sentence, in cases where we use a demonstrative pronoun and a conjunction—

Dum populi Romani nomen extabit, quod quidem erit, si per te licebit, sempiternum; where quod = et id.

Res loquitur ipsa: quae semper valet plurimum; where quae = et ea.

Oculorum, inquit Plato, est in nobis sensus acerrimus: quibus sapientiam non cernimus; where quibus = tamen eis.

Magna vis est conscientiae; quam qui neglegunt, se ipsi indicant; where quam = et eam.

Grave ipsius conscientiae pondus est; qua sublata, jacent omnia; where qua = et eā.

Messanam sibi Verres urbem delegerat, quam haberet adiutricem scelerum; where quam = ut eam.

Haec tibi ridicula videntur. Non enim ades: quae si videres, lacrimas non teneres; where quae = at ea.

M. Marcellus, qui ter consul fuit, summa virtute, pietate, gloria militari, periit in mari: qui tamen ob virtutem gloria et laude vivit; where qui = at ille.

223. A relative clause referring to an antecedent of which the writer chooses to speak indefinitely has the Subjunctive—

Sunt qui putant, *There are some who think,*

Sunt qui putent, *There are some who think,*

are types of constructions in common use; in the first, the writer makes the statement as of some *definite* persons, in the other he chooses to speak *indefinitely*.

Compare also the following sentences from Sallust—

Haud longe a flumine Mulucha, quod Iugurthae Bocchique regnum *disiungebat*, erat mons saxeus.

Neque flumen, neque mons erat, qui fines eorum *discerneret*.

The negatives in the latter passage taking the remark out of the region of *fact*, and rendering it a mere *conception* of the writer.

So in such sentences as these—

*Nihil est quod deus efficere non possit.*

*Nemo est qui tibi sapientius suadere possit te ipso.*

*Nemo est qui non hanc animi affectionem probet.*

*Mea sententia, qui reipublicae sit hostis, felix esse nemo potest.*

*Multa, quae nostri causa nunquam faceremus, facimus causa amicorum.*

*Apud Epicureos nihil est, quod atomorum concursus efficere non possit.*

*Rex omnia, quae ad bellum necessaria essent, quam celerrime comparari iussit.*

*Nemo est, qui me amat, qui te non amet.*

*Nemo est orator qui se Demosthenis similem esse nolit.*

*Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad eos pervenissent poposcit.*

*De republica quod tibi scribam nihil habeo.*

*Novi quod ad te scriberem nihil erat.*

*Innocentia est affectio talis animi, quae noceat nemini.*

*Dum hominum genus erit, qui accuset eos, non deerit.*

224. *Quin* is used for *Qui* . . . non in the nominative with all genders—

*MASC.* *Quis est, quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus.*

*FEM.* *Nulla est tam facilis res, quin difficilis sit, quam invitatus facias; where quam = si eam.*

*NEUT.* *Nihil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possit.*

225. When the statements and opinions of others are reported, the Subjunctive is used in a relative clause—

*Zenoni placuit bonum esse solum quod honestum esset.*

*Xerxes praemium proposuit (ei), qui invenisset novam voluptatem.*

226. The Subjunctive is much used in emphatic questions—

Quid putem? *What am I to think?*

Quis fallere possit amantem?—VIRG.

Quis talia fando

Temperet a lacrimis?—VIRG.

Quid facerem?

Such Subjunctives are called *Dubitative*.

227. The relative clause is thrown forward to obtain emphasis—

Cultrum, quem sub veste abditum habebat (Lucretia), eum in corde defigit.

Ad Senatum quas misi litteras, velim prius perlegas.

Qualis esset natura montis qui cognoscerent misit.

Gloriam qui spreverit, veram habebit.

228. When a noun, in apposition to the antecedent, is added to the *defining* relative, the relative stands before the noun, contrary to English idiom—

Casilinum occupat, quae urbs Falernum ac Campanum agros dividit.

## 229. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, } *some one.*

Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, }

Ecqui, ecquae, ecquod, }

Ecquis, ecqua, ecquid, } *interrogative, any one?*

Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whosoever*. Declined like *qui*, with the addition of *cumque* to each of the simple forms.

Quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *a certain one*. *m* before *d* is changed into *n*, as *quendam*, *quorundam*.

Quinam, quoenam, quodnam, } *who then?* Emphatic interro-

Quisnam, quisnam, quidnam, } *gative.*

Quivis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis, }

Quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet or quidlibet, } *any you please.*

Quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quippiam, *any one*.

Quisquam, quisquam, quicquam, *any one at all*. No Plural.

Quisque, quaeque, quodque *or* quicque, *each, every*.

Quisquis, quisquis, quicquid, *whosoever*. Only found in the nominative singular; in the accusative, quemquem, quicquid; in the ablative, quoquo; and in the dative and ablative plural, quibusquibus.

Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquodque *or* unumquidque, *each individual*, has both parts declined; thus, uniuscuiusque, unicuique, etc.

NOTE.—In these compounds of *qui* and *quis*, where a double form is given, that which corresponds to the declension of *qui* is used, as a rule, as an *adjective*; and that which corresponds to the declension of *quis* is used as a *noun*.

The following are examples of the use of these pronouns :—

Optimum quidque rarissimum est.

Quidvis egestas imperat.

Stat sua cuique dies.—VIRG.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas.—VIRG.

An quisquam unquam gentium est aequae miser?—TER.

Fuit quoddam tempus cum in agris homines vagabantur.

Quoscumque de te queri audiui, quacumque potui ratione placavi.

Ex tot generibus nullum est animal praeter hominem, quod habeat notitiam aliquam Dei.

Iuppiter non minus quam vestrum quivis formidat malum.

Quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat.

Pictoribus atque poetis

Quidlibet audendi semper fuit aequa potestas.—HOR.

Estne quisquam omnium mortalium, de quo melius existimes tu?

Nec quisquam ex agmine tanto

Audet adire virum.—VIRG.

Magni est iudicis statuere quid quemque cuique praestare oporteat.

Quisnam tuebitur Publii Scipionis memoriam mortui?

Est boni iudicis parvis ex rebus coniecturam facere unius-  
cuiusque et cupiditatis et incontinentiae.

Quid quaeque nox aut dies ferat incertum est.

Avaritia hominem ad quodvis maleficium impellit.

Ut enim histrioni actio, saltatori motus, non quilibet, sed  
certus quidam est datus; sic vita agenda est certo genere  
quodam non quolibet.

Iam Romana res adeo valida erat, ut cuilibet finitimarum  
civitatum par bello esset.

Sit anulus tuus non ut vas aliquod, sed tamquam ipse tu :  
non minister alienae voluntatis, sed testis tuae.

"Veni Athenas," inquit Democritus, "neque me quisquam  
ibi agnovit."

Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusanus fuit quam quisquam  
superiorum.

Quae res est quae cuiusquam animum in hac causa dubium  
facere possit?

Equem Caesare nostro acriorem in rebus gerendis, eodem  
in victoria temperatiorem aut legisti aut audisti?

Suam quique culpam auctores ad negotia transferunt.

Non omnia omnibus sunt tribuenda, sed suum cuique.

Non omnes idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.

Ferocissimus quisque iuvenum cum armis voluntarius adest.

Mens cuiusque is est quisque.

Dum tua sim Dido, quidlibet esse feram.—Ov.

### 230. COMPOUNDS OF UTER AND ALTER.

Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *both, each of two, and*

Utervis, utravis, utrumvis, *which of the two you will, and*

Uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *which of the two you please, have*  
the first part declined like Uter.

Alteruter, alterautra, alterumutrum, or } *one of two,*  
Alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum,

has both parts declined, as *Gen. Alteriusutrius*, etc.; or only  
the latter, as *Gen. Alterutrius*, etc.

Magna vis est in fortuna in utramque partem, vel ad secundas res, vel adversas.

Magna est vis conscientiae, iudices, et magna in utramque partem; ut neque timeant, qui nihil commiserint: et poenam semper ante oculos versari putent, qui peccarint.

Utrumvis salvo officio facere poteris.

Pompeium puto alterutrum de filiis ad te missurum.

Non est tuae dignitatis atque fidei ut contra alterutrum, cum utrique sis coniunctissimus, arma feras.

Video, quid mea intersit, quid utriusque nostrum.

Qui utramvis novit, ambas noverit.—TER.

Minus habeo virium, quam vestrum utervis.

### DERIVATIVES OF NOSTER AND CUIUS.

231. From Noster and Cuius are formed the adjectives of one termination—

Nostras, *Gen.* Nostrātis, *Of our country.*

Cuias, *Gen.* Cuiātis, *Of what country.*

Socrates quidem cum rogaretur, cuiatem se esse diceret: "Mundanum," inquit. Totius enim mundi se incolam et civem arbitrabatur.

An Seythes Anacharsis potuit pro nihilo pecuniam ducere: nostrates philosophi non poterunt?

### CORRELATION OF CLAUSES.

232. We frequently find such correlative words as—

Quālis, *of what kind,*

Quantus, *how great,*

Quōt, *how many,*

Quo, *in what proportion,*

Cum, *both,*

Quam, *as,*

Ut, *as,*

Tālis, *of such a kind.*

Tantus, *so great.*

Tōt, *so many.*

Eo, *in that proportion.*

Tum, *and.*

Tam, *so much, so.*

Ita, *so.*

and the like, standing one in each of two clauses of a sentence ; thus—

Quot homines, tot sententiae.

Quot homines, tot causae.

Quantum me diligis, tantum adhibe in te diligentiae.

Quo plures erant, eo maior caedes fuit.

Quid tam planum videtur, quam mare ?

Tantum eorum multitudinem interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium.

Multas magnasque habui consul conciones : nullam unquam vidi tantam quanta nunc vestra est.

Quot orationum genera esse diximus, totidem oratorum reperiuntur.

Plerique a quo plurimum sperant, ei potissimum inserviunt.

Plerique amicum habere talem volunt, quales ipsi esse non possunt, quaeque ipsi non tribuunt amicis, haec ab eis desiderant.

Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca,

Tantum habet et fidei.—Juv.

Iacet in maerore meus frater, neque tam de sua vita, quam de me metuit.

Tot tropaea ex hoste reportavimus, quot nulla alia gens iactare possit.

Licet videre, qualescumque summi civitatis viri sunt, talem civitatem fuisse.

Te quaeso, ut qualem te iam antea populo Romano prae-  
buisti, talem te et nobis et populo Romano hoc tempore impertias.

Quo minus gloriam petebat, eo illum magis sequebatur.

Talis est quaeque respublica, qualis eius aut natura aut voluntas qui illam regit.

Luxuria cum omni aetate turpis, tum senectuti foedissima est.

Quo quis est melior, eo est modestior.

Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios improbos suspicatur.



## OBLIQUE NARRATION.

233. If we report the precise words used by a speaker we call it **Direct Narration**.

If we make the words of a speaker conform to the grammatical construction of a sentence, of which the principal verb is *said*, *answered*, or the like, we call it **Indirect (or Oblique) Narration**; for example—

*Direct Narration*, Tum Cato, “ego,” inquit, “scripsi ad Caesarem.”

*Indirect Narration*, Cato dixit se scripsisse ad Caesarem.

The following are the main features of Oblique Narration—

1. The pronouns and pronominal adjectives of the first and second persons, *ego*, *tu*, *meus*, *tuus*, do not occur.
2. *Se*, *suus*, *ipse* refer generally to the subject of the sentence; *ille* and *is* refer to the object of the sentence.
3. Verbs are put in the Infinitive and Subjunctive.

1. *Simple Statements in Oblique Narration.*

234. The Indicative tenses of a Direct statement are changed into the corresponding tenses of the Infinitive, Imperfect tenses being replaced by Imperfects, and Perfect tenses by Perfects; thus—

*facio* and *faciebam* are changed into *facere*.

*fecit* and *feceram* are           ,,           *fecisse*.

*faciam*                    *is*           ,,           *facturum (esse)*.

NOTE.—The Future-Perfect seldom occurs in a simple statement, but such an expression as *videro*, *I shall soon see*, might be rendered in oblique narration by *mox visurum*.

The following are simple examples of the conversion of Direct to Oblique Narration—

Direct.	Oblique.
Ego te pro hoste habeo.	( <i>Dixit</i> ) Se illum pro hoste habiturum.
Mihi nulla vobiscum amicitia esse potest.	Sibi nullam cum illis amicitiam esse posse.
Me Albani gerendo bello ducem creavere.	Se Albanos gerendo bello ducem creavisse.
Non ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt.	Non sese Gallis sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse.
Transii Rhenum non mea sponte sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis.	Transiisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis.
Ego prius in Galliam veni quam populus Romanus.	Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum.
Ego quoque dictator Romae fui.	Se quoque dictatorem Romae fuisse.
Diem ad deliberandum sumam.	Diem se ad deliberandum sump- turum.
Ego nisi victor in castra non rever- tam.	( <i>Iuravit</i> ) se nisi victorem in castra non reversurum.
Veritas laborat nimis saepe, ex- tinguitur nunquam.	( <i>Aiunt</i> ) veritatem laborare nimis saepe, extinguere nunquam.

## 2. Simple Questions.

Questions expressed directly by an Indicative are usually expressed by the Infinitive for the first and third persons, and by the Subjunctive (sometimes Infinitive) for the second person—

Direct.	Oblique.
Quid vivimus?	Quid se vivere?
Quid est turpius?	Quid esse turpius?
Quid de praeda faciendum cen- setis?	Quid de praeda faciendum cen- serent?
Num rempublicam eversuri estis?	Num rempublicam eversuros esse?
Quo fugitis? Quamve in fugâ spem habetis?	Quo fugerent? Quamve in fuga spem haberent?
Quantum interest inter modera- tionem antiquam et novam superbiam?	Quantum interesse inter modera- tionem antiquam et novam superbiam?

3. *Simple Commands or Prohibitions.*

In these, the Imperative or Subjunctive of the Direct speech is replaced by the Subjunctive in Oblique narration—

Direct.	Oblique.
Ad consules ite.	Ad consules irent.
Create consules ex plebe.	Crearent consules ex plebe.
Ne commiseris ut hic locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen capiat.	Ne committeret ut is locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet.

4. *Subordinate Sentences.*

235. In a Subordinate sentence, the verb, whether Indicative or Subjunctive in the Direct narration, is put in the Subjunctive in Oblique narration—

Direct.	Oblique.
	( <i>Dicunt</i> )
Sunt nonnulli, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valet.	Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat.
Nos paratis sumus portas aperire, quaeque imperasti facere.	Sese paratos esse portas aperire quaeque imperaverit facere.
In urbe parata sunt quae iussisti.	In urbe parata esse quae iusserit.
	( <i>Dixit</i> )
Ego plus quam feci facere non possum.	Se plus quam fecisset facere non posse.

1. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit :—Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse : si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere.

His words were :—Si quid mihi a te, Caesar, opus esset, ipse ad te venissem : si quid tu me vis, ad me veni.

2. Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspicem quum vidisset.

His words were :—Miror quod non rideat haruspex haruspicem quum viderit.

3. L. Tarquinii uxor Tullia inquietum animum stimulavit: si sibi eum, quo digna esset, dii dedissent virum, domi se prope diem visuram regnum fuisse, quod apud patrem videat.

Her words were :—Si mihi eum, quo digna sum, dii dedissent virum, domi meae prope diem vidissem regnum, quod apud patrem video.

4. Dux Helvetiorum ita cum Caesare egit :—Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset.

His words were :—Si pacem populus Romanus nobiscum faciet, in eam partem ibimus atque ibi erimus ubi nos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse volueris.

5. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit :—Ius esse belli ut qui vicissent iis quos vicissent quemadmodum vellent imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse.

His words were :—Ius est belli ut qui vicerint iis quos vicerint quemadmodum velint imperent: item vos, Romani, victis non ad alterius praescriptum sed ad vestrum arbitrium imperare consuestis.

6. Vercingetorix venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat. Fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. Id *sibi* ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici; maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde agmine impeditos adorirentur. Si pedites *suis* auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, relictis impedimentis *suae* saluti consulant, et usu rerum

necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, et ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum.

NOTE 1.—*Se* and *suis* sometimes refer to the persons spoken of. From the nature of the sentence there is scarcely ever any ambiguity as to the persons to whom these pronominal forms refer. Thus, in this passage, *sibi* clearly refers to the friends of the speaker; *suis* and *suae* to his adversaries, the Romans.

NOTE 2.—The tenses of the verbs in dependent clauses depend partly on the tense of the verb introducing the speech. Thus here the Present *demonstrat* causes *ferant*, *morentur*, *confidat*, etc., to be in the Present-Imperfect. Had *demonstravit* been used, these verbs would have been in the Past-Imperfect—*ferrent*, *morarentur*, *confideret*, etc.

NOTE 3.—The Perfect *fuisse* of oblique narration often represents the Imperfect *erat* of direct speech—

Zeno non eos solum, qui tum erant, fugebat maledictis: sed Socratem ipsum scurram Atticum *fuisse* dicebat.

## THE HISTORIC INFINITIVE.

236. The Present Infinitive is used instead of the Past-Imperfect Indicative in lively descriptions of actions and emotions.

Thus when Sallust is describing the proceedings of Catiline just before the outbreak of his conspiracy, he writes—

Interea Romae multa simul *moliri*; Consuli insidias *tendere*, *parare* incendia, opportuna loca armatis hominibus *obsidere*: ipse cum telo *esse*, item alios *iubere*: *hortari*, uti semper intenti paratique essent: dies noctesque *festinare*, *vigilare*, neque insomnia neque labore *fatigari*.

And when he describes Catiline's exertions in the final battle—

Interea Catilina cum expeditis in prima acie *versari*, laborantibus *succurrere*, integros pro sauciis *arcessere*: omnia *providere*, multum ipse *pugnare*, saepe hostem *ferire*; strenui militis et boni imperatoris officia simul exsequabatur.

### DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

237. Disjunctive questions are those in which the negation of one involves the affirmation of the other; as, for example—

“ *Whether* is it easier to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee, *or* to say, Arise and walk ? ”

They are introduced in Latin chiefly by the first of the four following forms:—

1. *utrum* ..... *an* or *-ne*.
2. *-ne* ..... *an*.
3. .... *an*.
4. .... *-ne*.

*Utrum* ea vestra, *an* nostra culpa est ?

*Utrum* malles te, si potestas esset, semel ut Laelium consulem, *an* ut Cinnam quater ?

*Utrum* tandem beatior C. Marius tum, cum Cimbricae victoriae gloriam cum collega Catulo communicavit, *an* cum civili bello victor iratus necessariis Catuli deprecantibus non semel respondit, sed saepe, “ *Moriatur* ? ”

Isne est, quem quaero, *an* non ?—*TER.*

Quaeritur Corinthiis bellum indicamus, *an* non.

Fallor, *an* arma sonant ?—*OV.*

Fiat, neque fiat, id quaeritur.

Iphicrates, cum interrogaretur *utrum* pluris patrem matremne faceret, “ *matrem*, ” inquit.

NOTE.—In translating English into Latin care must be taken

to distinguish *whether . . . or* introducing disjunctive questions, from *whether . . . or* expressing conditions ; as, "*Whether we live, therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.*"

The conditional *whether . . . or* is usually expressed in Latin by *sive . . . seu, or seu . . . seu.*

### ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

238. 1. Enim and vero rarely stand at the beginning of a sentence ; autem, quoque, and quidem never—

Zeno plurimis novis verbis usus est : nova enim dicebat.

Num tum ingemuisse Epaminondam putas, cum una cum sanguine vitam effluere sentiret ? Imperantem enim patriam Lacedaemoniis relinquebat, quam acceperat servientem.

Croesus hostium vim se perversurum putavit : pervertit autem suam.

Zenoni licuit, cum rem aliquam invenisset inusitatam, inauditum quoque ei rei nomen imponere.

Philosophia vero, omnium mater artium, quid est aliud nisi, ut Plato, donum, ut ego, inventum deorum ?

Ne vos quidem, iudices, ei, qui me absolvistis, mortem timueritis. Nec enim cuiquam bono mali quicquam evenire potest, nec vivo nec mortuo, nec unquam eius res a deis immortalibus neglegentur, nec mihi ipsi hoc accidit fortuito. Nec vero ego eis, a quibus accusatus aut a quibus condemnatus sum, habeo quid succenseam, nisi quod mihi nocere se crediderunt.

Nec vero unquam ne ingemiscit quidem vir fortis et sapiens nisi forte ut se intendat ad firmitatem, ut in stadio cursores exclamant quam maxime possunt. Faciunt idem, cum exercentur, athletae ; pugiles vero, etiam cum feriunt adversarium, in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt ; non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur, venitque plaga vehementior.

NOTE.—An emphatic word or phrase always comes between *ne* and *quidem*; thus—

Ego *ne* utilem *quidem* arbitror esse nobis futurarum rerum scientiam.

Iphicrates fuit talis dux, ut *ne* de maioribus natu *quidem* ei quisquam anteponeretur.

2. Words and phrases relating to the subject of a sentence are placed close to the subject—

Divitiacus *multis cum lacrimis* Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit. . . .

Dumnorix *gratia et largitione* apud Sequanos plurimum poterat. . . .

Helvetii *omnium rerum inopia adducti* legatos de deditione ad Caesarem mittunt.

Galli *propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam* trans Rhenum colonias mittebant.

Caesar *exercitum suum* hiematum in fines Aeduorum duxit.

3. Emphasis is obtained when contrasted words are placed close to each other—

Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit. . . .

Pompeio *Senatus* totam rempublicam, omnem Italiae pubem, cuncta populi Romani arma commisit.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare.

Fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent.

Olim

Rusticus urbanum murem *mus* paupere fertur

Accepisse cavo, *veterem vetus hospes amicum*.—HOR.

Ita placet stoicis, quae in terris gignuntur, ad usum hominum omnia creari, *homines autem hominum causa* esse generatos, ut ipsi inter se *aliis alii* prodesse possent.

Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator.—JUV.

Non semper viator a latrone, nonnunquam etiam latro a viatore occiditur.



*Tu me iratum, Sexte, putas tibi?*

Num quid igitur aliud in iudicium venit, nisi *uter utri* insidias fecerit?

*Ego tibi irascerer? tibi ego possem irasci?*

Quid *mihi sine te* umquam aut *tibi sine me* iucundum fuit?

O rus, quando *ego te* aspiciam?—HOR.

In omni re vincit imitationem veritas.

4. Attention is directed to emphatic words by separating them by means of unemphatic words (often personal pronouns) from other words with which they are in grammatical agreement, or even from words with which they are compounded—

*Iustitia est omnium* domina ac regina *virtutum*.

*Hunc tu* hostem, Cato, contemnis?

*Misericordiam* spoliatio consulatus *magnam* habere debet, iudices. Una enim *eripiuntur* cum consulatu *omnia*. *Invidiam* vero his temporibus habere consulatus ipse *nullam* potest.

Vercingetorix, *levi* facto equestri proelio *atque eo secundo*, in castra exercitum reduxit.

*Sum enim consecutus*, non modo ut domus tua tota, sed ut cuncta civitas me tibi esse amicissimum esse cognosceret.

Lydia, dic *per omnes*

Te *deos* oro, Sybarin cur properes amando

Perdere?—HOR.

*Per* mihi, *per*, inquam, *gratum* feceris, si in hoc tam diligens fueris, quam soles in iis rebus, quas me valde velle arbitraris.

Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod *aliud iter* haberent *nullum*.

*Arma* cuncti spectant *et bellum*.

Iustum est bellum, quibus necessarium, et pia arma, quibus *nulla* nisi in armis relinquitur *spes*.

5. Co-ordinate sentences, connected by *et* and its equivalents,

are avoided as much as is possible by Latin prose writers ; thus—

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
Caesar fortified his camp <i>and</i> left two legions in it.	Caesar munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit.
Jugurtha is put in chains <i>and</i> handed over to Sulla.	Jugurtha Sullae victus traditur.

On the other hand, Latin poetry, especially the Odes of Horace, abounds with co-ordinate sentences—

Saevius ventis agitur ingens  
Pinus, et celsae graviore casu  
Decidunt turres, feriuntque summos  
Fulmina montes.—HOR.

Et me fecere poetam

Pierides ; sunt et mihi carmina ; me quoque dicunt  
Vatem pastores ; sed non ego credulus illis.—VIRG.

6. Very frequently co-ordinate words and sentences are put side by side without any conjunction—

Gloriam, honorem, imperium bonus et ignavus aequè sibi exoptant.

Nos libertatem militibus, iura, leges, iudicia, imperium orbis terrae, dignitatem, pacem, otium pollicemur.

Obsidibus receptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas.

Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur ; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni ; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.

Nat lupus inter oves : fulvos vehit unda leones :  
Unda vehit tigres.—OVID (*describing the Deluge*).

Populus Alcidae gratissima, vitis Iaccho,  
Formosae myrtus Veneri, sua laurea Phoebò ;  
Phyllis amat corulos ; illas dum Phyllis amabit,  
Nec myrtus vincet corulos, nec laurea Phoebi.—VIRG.

Fraxinus in silvis pulcherrima, pinus in hortis,  
Populus in fluviis, abies in montibus altis.—VIRG.

7. The Verb, as a general rule, comes at the end of the sentence. But parts of *Sum*, as a rule, do not stand last in the sentence—

Horum omnium fortissimi *sunt* Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissime *absunt*, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe *commeant* atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos *pertinent*, *important*; proximique *sunt* Germanis, qui trans Rhenum *incolunt*, quibuscum continenter bellum *gerunt*; qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute *praecedunt*, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis *contendunt*, cum aut suis finibus eos *prohibent*, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum *gerunt*.

Hence it is that when emphasis is to be thrown on the verb, it is placed first in the sentence—

Tum dictator, silentio facto, "Bene habet," inquit, "Quirites. *Vicit* disciplina militaris, *vicit* imperii maiestas, quae in discrimine fuerunt, an ulla post hanc diem essent."

*Est* caeleste numen : es, magne Iuppiter.

*Redintegravit* luctum in castris consulum adventus, ut vix ab eis abstinerent manus, quorum temeritate in eum locum deducti essent.

8. In English we call any combination of Principal and Dependent sentences a *Period*. In Latin, to constitute a period, part, at least, of the principal sentence must follow the dependent sentence (or sentences).

Thus the following are Periods in Latin—

Quae acciderunt, omnia dixi futura.

Fuisti saepe, credo, cum Athenis esses, in scholis philosophorum.

Ego, si quae volo expediero, brevi tempore te, ut spero, videbo.

Romae quia postea non fuisti, quam a me discesseras, miratus sum.

Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt.

Constabat eos, qui concidentem vulneribus Cn. Pompeium vidissent, cum in illo ipso acerbissimo miserrimoque spectaculo sibi timerent, quod se classe hostium circumfusus viderent, nihil aliud tum egisse, nisi ut remiges hortarentur et ut salutem adipiscerentur fuga; posteaquam Tyrum venissent, tum afflicti lamentarique coepisse.

Socrates, cum esset ex eo quaesitum, Archelaum Perdiccae filium, qui tum fortunatissimus haberetur, nonne beatum putaret? "Haud scio," inquit, "nunquam enim cum eo collocutus sum."

Darius in fuga, cum aquam turbidam et cadaveribus inquinatam bibisset, negavit unquam se bibisse iucundius. Nunquam videlicet sitiens biberat.

Timotheum, clarum hominem Athenis et principem civitatis, ferunt, cum cenavisset apud Platonem eoque convivio admodum delectatus esset vidissetque eum postridie, dixisse: "vestrae quidem cenae non solum in praesentia, sed etiam postero die iucundae sunt."

Socrates, in pompa cum magna vis auri argentique ferretur, "Quam multa non desidero," inquit.

Praeclare Anaxagoras, qui cum Lampsaci moreretur, quaerentibus amicis, velletne Clazomenas in patriam, si quid accidisset, auferri: "Nihil necesse est," inquit, "undique enim ad inferos tantundem viae est."

E Lacedaemoniis, qui in Thermopylis occiderunt, unus, cum Perses hostis in colloquio dixisset glorians "Solem prae iaculorum multitudine et sagittarum non videbitis:" "In umbra igitur," inquit, "pugnabimus."

Themistocles, cum ei Simonides aut quis alius artem memoriae polliceretur, "Oblivionis," inquit, "mallem: nam memini etiam quae nolo, oblivisci non possum quae volo."

## PART VII.

### PROSODY.

239. PROSODY teaches the quantity of syllables, and the laws of metre.

By *quantity* is meant the state of a syllable with respect to the time required to pronounce it.

#### 1. RULES OF QUANTITY.

240. Syllables are long, as in *finēs*.

„ short, as in *ămör*.

„ doubtful, as the first in *pățrem*.

241. A syllable is long by *nature*, when its vowel has naturally the long pronunciation, as *söl*, *cür*.

242. A syllable is long by *position*, when by reason of two or more following consonants, or a double consonant, its pronunciation is lengthened; thus in verse—

though *ēs*, *thou art*, is short, *ēst*, *he is*, is long;

though *făcis* is short, its nominative *făx*, *torch*, is long.

With regard to lengthening of vowels by position, observe—

1. That the two consonants need not be in the same word—

*Quis canerēt Nymphas?*—VIRG.

2. That *h* is not reckoned as a consonant for this purpose—

*Incipe, si quid habes.*—VIRG.

3. That *qu* is regarded as a single letter—

Gaudet *ē*quis canibusque.—HOR.

4. That a vowel, naturally short, before a *mute followed by a liquid* is in many cases, especially when the liquid is *r*, of doubtful quantity—

Natum ante ora pātris, pātrē qui obtruncat ad aras.—VIRG.

But when a vowel is naturally long, it cannot be shortened before a mute and liquid; thus—māter, mātis, mātī, etc.

243. Diphthongs are long, as *ārum*, *pōna*. But *prae* is shortened before a vowel in a compound word, as—

Iamque novi prāeēunt fasces, nova purpura fulget.—OV.

244. Where two vowels have been formed into one by contraction the syllable is long, as *cōgo*, from *cō-āgo*; *tibicen*, from *tibīcen*.

245. A vowel before another vowel in the same word, even if *h* comes between them, is short, as *fiūs*, *trāho*, *prōhibeo*. Exceptions are—

1. The old genitive of the *A* declension, *aurāi*, *pictāi*—

Dives equum, dives pictāi vestis et auri.—VIRG.

2. The *i* in *fio*, except *-er-* follows, as *fiam*, *fiet*; but *fieri*, *fieret*—

Omnia nunc fiunt, fieri quae posse negabam.

3. Genitives in *-ius* have the *i* common in *illius*, *istius*, *ipsius*, *ullius*, *nullius*, *solius*. But *alius* is always long, and *alterius* usually short.

4. Vowels in words from the Greek, when the original vowels are long, as *āer*, *herōas*, *academīa*.

*Quantity of Final Syllables.*

246. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are generally long, as

ā, dā, dē,  
sī, prō, mē,

except the enclitics -quē, -nē, -vē.

247. Monosyllabic words ending in a single consonant, except *b, d, l, t*, are usually long; thus—

1. sīc, sīn, grūs, mōs (mōris),  
vēr, pār, sūs, ōs (ōris).

But 2. āb, ād, fēl,  
āt, ūt, mēl,  
quīd, sēd, vēl.

The following are exceptions to 1:—

fāc, nēc, quīs,  
īn, vīr, pēr,  
cōr, lāc, īs,  
ōs (ossis), fēr.

Exceptions to 2 are sāl and sōl.

248. For words of more than one syllable—

*A* final is short—

In all cases of nouns and adjectives, except the ablative singular, and the vocative of Greek nouns in -ās; thus—  
portā, bonā, nominā, lampadā; but portā (abl.) and Aeneā, voc. and abl. of Aeneas.

*A* final is long—

1. In the Imperative of the first conjugation, as amā.  
2. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals, as contrā,  
frustrā, trigintā.

But itā and quiā are short.

*E* final is short in most words, as

matrē, iudicē, ponē, nempē, facilē, amaverē.

*E* final is long—

1. In the Ablative of the *E* declension, *faciē, rē*.
2. In the Imperative of the second conjugation, *monē*.
3. In Adverbs in *e* formed from adjectives in *us*, as *doctē*, except *benē, malē, infernē, and supernē*.
4. In words from the Greek long vowel, as *Dircē, Tempē, nymphē*.

*I* final is long, as

*amavī, dominī, patri, monerī, ūtī, ūtī*.

But *nisi* and *quasi* are short.

*Mihī, tibī, sibī, ubī, ibī*, are doubtful.

Greek datives and vocatives have *i* short, as *Paridī, Alexī*.

*O* final is long, as

*dominō, aurō, monendō, ambō, omninō, falsō*.

Exceptions are—

1. The adverbs *mōdō, citō, immō*; the numerals *duō, octō*; the pronoun *egō*; and the imperative *cēdō*.
2. The first persons of verbs in *o* became gradually doubtful, as *amō, rogō*. *Sciō* and *nesciō* are usually short.
3. The nominative of the consonant-declension ending in *o* became gradually doubtful, as *virgō, homō*.

*U* final is long, as *cornū, diū*.

249. Words of more than one syllable ending in any single consonant, except *s*, have as a rule the final syllable short; thus—

*C. donēc, illic* (pronoun).

*D. apūd, illūd*.

*L. consūl, vīgīl, sēmēl*.

*N. carmēn, nomēn, flamēn, tībīcēn*.

*R. amōr, oratōr, augūr, aggēr, rhetōr*.

*T. capūt, amāt, audīt*.

Exceptions—

*Illic* and *istic* (adverbs).

*Nihil* has the final syllable doubtful.

Words from the Greek, as *Aeneān, aēr, aethēr, cratēr*.



250. *AS* final is long, as *portās, civitās, amās*. But *anās, duck*, and Greek nominatives in *as*, gen. *ādis*, as *Arcās*, and Greek acc. pl. as *heroās, lampadās*.

*ES* final is long, as *comitēs, faciēs, amēs, audiēs, legerēs, pēs*.

The following are exceptions :—

1. Some nouns of the consonant-declension which have genitives in *-idis, -ētis, -itis*, as *obsēs, segēs, milēs*. But *abiēs, ariēs, pariēs*, have *ēs* long.
2. Compounds of *ēs* (from *sum*), as *adēs, potēs*.
3. Greek nominatives, like *Arcadēs*.
4. The preposition *penēs*.

*IS* final is short, as *ignis, ducis, tradis, humilis*. Exceptions are—

1. The dative and ablative plural, as *dominis, signis, nobis, vobis*.
2. The nominative and accusative plural of the *I* declension, as *classis*.
3. The second pers. sing. of the fourth conjugation, as *audis*.
4. The verbs *vis, sis, fis, velis, nolis, malis*.  
*Sanguis* and *pulvis* are doubtful.

*OS* final is long, as *dominōs, magnōs, illōs, arbōs, honōs*. Exceptions are—*compōs* and *impōs*, and some Greek words as *Delōs*.

*US* final is short, as *dominūs, decūs, opūs, fructūs, fontibūs, amamūs*. Exceptions are—

1. Contracted cases of the *U* declension, as gen. sing. *fructūs* and nom. and acc. pl. *fructūs*.
2. Nouns in *us* of the consonant declension which have long *ū* in the genitive, as *palūs, tellūs, virtūs*.

## 2. RULES OF METRE.

251. A *verse* in Latin consists of a certain number of *feet*, arranged according to certain rules.

A *foot* consists of a number of long or short syllables arranged in different combinations.

252. The feet with which we have to do here are—

1. The *Dactyl*, a long syllable, followed by two short syllables, as *fūmīnā*.
2. The *Spondee*, two long syllables, as *mōntēs*.
3. The *Iambus*, a short followed by a long syllable, as *āmās*.
4. The *Trochee*, a long followed by a short syllable, as *aūdīt*.

### *Hexameter Verse.*

253. The *Hexameter* consists of six feet, of which the first four must be *Dactyls* or *Spondees*, the fifth generally a *Dactyl*, the sixth a *Spondee* or *Trochee*—

Pōpūlūs | Ālcī|dās grā|tissimā, | vitīs Ī|acchō;  
 Fōrmō|sās mŷr|tūs Vēnē|ri, sūā | lāurēā | Phōēbō;  
 Phŷllīs ā|māt cōrū|lōs; ī|llās dūm | Phŷllīs ā|mābīt,  
 Nēc mŷr|tūs vīn|cēt cōrū|lōs, nēc | lāurēā | Phōēbī.—VIRG.

Occasionally the fifth foot is a *Spondee*, as—

Cārā dē|ūm sūbō|lēs māg|nūm Iōvis | īnērē|mētūm.

### *Caesura.*

254. It is essential to the harmony of a verse that one or more of its feet should be made up of parts of two words. The technical name for this arrangement is *Caesura* (*cutting*).

255. The most common Caesura is that which is called the Penthemimeral, because it occurs at the end of *five* half-feet, thus—

Aurea purpuream | subnectit fibula vestem.

This Caesura is of itself sufficient to insure the harmony of the line.

256. The Hephthemimeral Caesura occurs at the end of *seven* half-feet, thus—

Ab Iove principium Musae; | Iovis omnia plena;  
Ille colit terras; illi | mea carmina curae.

But even in such verses the Penthemimeral Caesura also, as here, generally occurs.

257. Several Caesuras may occur in the same verse—

Arma | virumque | cano | Troiae | qui primus ab oris.  
Maioresque | cadunt | altis | de montibus umbrae.

### *Elegiac Couplets.*

258. An Elegiac poem consists of Hexameter lines followed alternately by lines called Pentameters.

The Pentameter consists of two parts, thus—

Dactyl, Dactyl, Long Syllable, || Dactyl, Dactyl, Long or Short Syllable.

A Spondee may be used instead of one, or both, of the Dactyls in the first part.

The following are examples of Pentameters—

Ălbă iă|gūm nīvē|ō || cūm bōvē | vāccă tū|līt||.  
Hīc cōlār, | hīc tēnē|ām || cūm Iōvē | tēmplă mē|ō||.  
Sīt căpī|tis dām|nō || Rōmă sō|lūtă mē|i||.  
Ēt nōs|trās pătri|ō || sānguīnē | tīnguē mă|nūs||.  
Vīctō|rēm tēr|ris || împōsī|tūră pē|dēm||.

The last word in the line is generally a word of two syllables, and either a Noun, Verb, or Pronoun.

259. The following are examples of Elegiac couplets—

*Ipsa doce quae sis. Hominum sententia fallax.*

*Optima tu proprii nominis auctor eris.*—Ov.

*Navita puppe sedens, "Delphina videbimus," inquit,*

*"Humida cum pulso nox erit orta die."*—Ov.

*Spes alit agricolas, spes sulcis credit aratis*

*Semina, quae magno fenore reddat ager.*—Tib.

*Quamvis nulla mei superest tibi cura, Neaera,*

*Sis felix, et sint candida fata tua.*—Tib.

*Quam vellem tecum longas requiescere noctes,*

*Et tecum longos pervigilare dies.*—Tib.

*Magni saepe duces, magni cecidere tyranni :*

*Et Thebae steterunt, altaque Troia fuit.*—Prop.

*Nil agis : insidias in me componis inanes :*

*Tendis iners docto retia nota mihi.*—Prop.

*Haud ullas portabis opes Acherontis ad undas*

*Nudus ab inferna, stulte, vehere rate.*

*Victor cum victis pariter miscebimur Indis :*

*Consule cum Mario, capte Iugurtha, sedes.*—Prop.

*Non ego laudari curo, mea Delia : tecum*

*Dummodo sim, quaeso segnis inersque vocer.*

*Te spectem, suprema mihi cum venerit hora,*

*Te teneam moriens deficiente manu.*—Tib.

*Cetera iam pridem didici puerilibus annis ;*

*Non tamen idcirco praetereunda mihi.*

*Moenia Dardanides nuper nova fecerat Ilus :*

*Ilus adhuc Asiae dives habebat opes.*

*Creditur armiferae signum caeleste Minervae*

*Urbis in Iliacae desiluisse iuga.*

*Cura videre fuit : vidi templumque locumque.*

*Hoc superest illic : Pallada Roma tenet.*—Ov.

*Elision.*

260. When a word beginning with a vowel or *h* follows a word ending in a vowel or diphthong or *m*, this vowel or diphthong or *m* (with the vowel preceding it) is elided, and does not count as a separate syllable.

Thus, in the following lines, the syllables printed in *italics* do not count in the verse—

Carmina nulla canam ; non, me pascente, capellae  
Florentem *cytisum* et salices carpetis amaras.—VIRG.

Saepe *malum* hoc nobis, si mens non laeva fuisset,  
De caelo tactas memini praedicere quercus.—VIRG.

Verum haec *tantum* alias inter caput extulit urbes  
Quantum lenta solent inter viburna cupressi.—VIRG.

Ah, virgo infelix, quae te dementia cepit!—VIRG.

Ducite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, ducite Daphnim.

Certe *equidem* audieram, qua se subducere colles  
Incipiunt, mollique iugum demittere clivo  
Usque ad *aquam* et veteres, iam fracta cacumina, fagos  
Omnia carminibus vestrum servasse Menalcan.—VIRG.

Vix ea fatus erat, summo cum monte videmus  
Ipsam inter pecudes vasta se mole moventem  
Pastorem Polyphemum et litora nota petentem,  
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.  
—VIRG.

Quod mare non novit, quae nescit Ariona tellus?  
Carmine currentes ille tenebat aquas.  
Saepe sequens agnam lupus est a voce retentus,  
Saepe avidum fugiens restitit agna lupum ;

Saepe canes leporesque umbra cubuere sub una,  
 Et stetit in saxo proxima cerva leae;  
 Et sine lite loquax cum Palladis alite cornix  
 Sedit, et accipitri iuncta columba fuit.—Ov.

Hei mihi difficile est imitari gaudia falsa,  
 Difficile est tristi fingere mente iocum.—Tib.

Portum tetigere carinae,  
 Puppibus et laeti nautae imposuere coronas.—Virg.

Humida solstitia atque hiemes orate serenas,  
 Agricolae, hiberno laetissima pulvere farra,  
 Laetus ager.—Virg.

NOTE 1.—The interjections O and heu are not elided—

Flumina amem silvasque inglorius. O ubi campi. . . —  
 Virg.

Heu, heu, quam pingui macer est mihi taurus in ervo.—  
 Virg.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes a long vowel is shortened and not elided—

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt?—Virg.

Torva leaena lupum sequitur; lupus ipse capellam;  
 Florentem cytisum sequitur lasciva capella;  
 Te Corydon, O Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptas.—Virg.

Strophades Graio stant nomine dictae,  
 Insulae Ionio in magno.—Virg.



# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
A, sound of, in Latin, . . . . .	1	Adverbial Expressions of Time, . . . . .	88
A, ab, abs, . . . . .	19, 47, 161	Adverbs, Comparison of, . . . . .	81
A-nouns declined, . . . . .	10	Adverbial Clauses, . . . . .	178
A-verbs, . . . . .	6, 7, 98, 127	Adverbs with Genitive, . . . . .	158
Ablative, simplest use of, . . . . .	19	Adversus and Adversum, . . . . .	154
— after Comparatives, . . . . .	88	Aio conjugated, . . . . .	126
— of Time, . . . . .	87	Aliqui and Aliquis, . . . . .	183
— of Price, . . . . .	91	Alius declined, . . . . .	74
— with Sum, . . . . .	96	Alteruter declined, . . . . .	185
— with Refert, . . . . .	125	Amo conjugated, . . . . .	98
— with Adjectives, . . . . .	144	Amor conjugated, . . . . .	158
— with Opus and Usus, . . . . .	145	Ante, . . . . .	47, 154
— with Natus, Ortus, etc., . . . . .	145	Antequam, . . . . .	90, 173
— with Verbs, . . . . .	150	Apodosis, . . . . .	175
— Absolute, . . . . .	151	Apposition, . . . . .	50
— after Prepositions, . . . . .	154	Apud, . . . . .	47, 155
Absque, . . . . .	161	Arrangement of Words in Sentences, . . . . .	194
Accedit, with Ut and Quod, . . . . .	124	Ater declined, . . . . .	22
Accusative, simplest use of, . . . . .	17	Attributes, . . . . .	4
— of Distance, . . . . .	86	Attributive Expressions, . . . . .	50
— of Time, . . . . .	87	Audio conjugated, . . . . .	101
— and Infinitive, . . . . .	140	Audior conjugated, . . . . .	107
— with Verbs, . . . . .	146	Autem, position of, in Sentence, . . . . .	194
— Double, . . . . .	147		
— Cognate, . . . . .	147	B, a labial mute, . . . . .	2
— of part affected, . . . . .	148		
— of Limitation, . . . . .	148	C, a guttural mute, . . . . .	2
— after Prepositions, . . . . .	154	C, sound of, . . . . .	3
Acer declined, . . . . .	28	Caesura, . . . . .	205
Ad, . . . . .	19, 47, 154	Calendar, Roman, . . . . .	91
Adjective, . . . . .	4	Capio conjugated, . . . . .	102
Adjectives with stems in A and O, . . . . .	20	Careo with Ablative, . . . . .	151
— in Simple Sentence, . . . . .	23	Cases of Nouns, . . . . .	9
— with Stems in I, . . . . .	27	Cases in the Simple Sentence, . . . . .	16
— of one termination, . . . . .	88	Case-constructions, . . . . .	140
— with Genitive, . . . . .	141	Cave with Subjunctive, . . . . .	169
— with Dative, . . . . .	143	Character, . . . . .	11
— with Ablative, . . . . .	144	Circum, Circa, and Circiter, . . . . .	47, 155
Adjectival Clauses, . . . . .	178	Circumdo, . . . . .	151
Adverbs, . . . . .	48	Cis and Citra, . . . . .	155
Adverbial Expressions, . . . . .	49	Clam, . . . . .	161



	PAGE		PAGE
Classis declined, . . . . .	35	Deponent Verbs, . . . . .	108, 115
Coepl conjugated, . . . . .	126	Deus declined, . . . . .	13
Cognate accusative, . . . . .	147	Dicitur, Construction of, . . . . .	125
Comparison of Adjectives, . . . . .	78	Dies declined, . . . . .	42
Comparison of Adverbs, . . . . .	81	Diphthongs, . . . . .	2
Compound Pronouns, . . . . .	183	Direct Questions, . . . . .	77
Compounds of Uter and Alter, . . . . .	185	Disjunctive Questions, . . . . .	193
Conditional Sentences, . . . . .	175	Dominus declined, . . . . .	13
Conjugations of Verbs, . . . . .	5	Domus declined, . . . . .	21
Conjunctions, Co-ordinative, . . . . .	62	Donec, . . . . .	88, 173
— Copulative, . . . . .	64	Dum, . . . . .	88, 173, 175
— Disjunctive, . . . . .	66	Dummodo, . . . . .	175
— Adversative, . . . . .	66	Duo declined, . . . . .	85
— Inferential, . . . . .	66	Durus declined, . . . . .	21
— Causal, . . . . .	67		
— Comparative, . . . . .	67	E, sound of, in Latin, . . . . .	1
Conjunctions, Subordinative, . . . . .	62, 75	E-nouns, . . . . .	42
— Final, . . . . .	168	E-verbs, . . . . .	6, 7, 99, 128
— Consecutive, . . . . .	170	E-verbs, . . . . .	6, 8, 100, 139
— Causal, . . . . .	172	E or Ex, . . . . .	47, 162
— Temporal, . . . . .	88, 173	Equi and Equis, . . . . .	183
— Concessive, . . . . .	174	Edo conjugated, . . . . .	122
— Comparative, . . . . .	175	Egeo with Ablative or Genitive, . . . . .	149
— Conditional, . . . . .	175	Ego declined, . . . . .	67
Consecutive Sentences, . . . . .	75	Elegiac couplets, . . . . .	206
Consonant Sounds, . . . . .	2	Elision, . . . . .	208
Consonant-stem Nouns, . . . . .	29	Emphasis by position, . . . . .	197
Contra, . . . . .	47, 155	Enim, position of, in sentence, . . . . .	194
Co-ordinate Sentences, . . . . .	196	Eo conjugated, . . . . .	119
Copula in Latin, . . . . .	23	Eo, compounds of, . . . . .	120
Copulative Verbs, . . . . .	146	Erga, . . . . .	155
Coram, . . . . .	161	Ethic Dative, . . . . .	153
Cornu declined, . . . . .	42	Etiam, . . . . .	66
Corpus declined, . . . . .	36	Etiamsi, . . . . .	174
Cuius, . . . . .	69	Etsi, . . . . .	174
Cuius, . . . . .	186	Extra, . . . . .	47, 155
Cum, Conjunction, . . . . .	89, 173		
Cum, Preposition, . . . . .	47, 161	F, a spirant, . . . . .	3
Cum—Tum, . . . . .	186	Fari conjugated, . . . . .	127
		Felix declined, . . . . .	38
D, a dental mute, . . . . .	2	Fero conjugated, . . . . .	116
Dative, simplest use of, . . . . .	18	Fero, compounds of, . . . . .	116
— with Sum, . . . . .	97	Feror conjugated, . . . . .	117
— Double, . . . . .	97	Final Conjunctions, . . . . .	75, 168
— with compounds of Sum, . . . . .	97	Final Sentences, . . . . .	75
— with Adjectives, . . . . .	143	Flo conjugated, . . . . .	122
— with Verbs, . . . . .	149	Fractions, . . . . .	86
— Ethic, . . . . .	153	Fructus declined, . . . . .	40
De, . . . . .	47, 162		
Defective Verbs, . . . . .	125	G, a guttural mute, . . . . .	2
Dentals, . . . . .	2	G, sound of, in Latin, . . . . .	3
Dependent Sentences, . . . . .	168	Genders in Latin, . . . . .	10

	PAGE		PAGE
Genders of Consonant Nouns, . . . . .	85	Is and Qui conjunctive words, . . . . .	70
Genders of <i>I</i> -Nouns, . . . . .	25, 27	Iste declined, . . . . .	72
Genitive, simplest use of, . . . . .	18	Iuxta, . . . . .	157
— Subjective, . . . . .	50	J, not a Latin letter, . . . . .	1
— Objective, . . . . .	50	K, only used in a few words, . . . . .	2
— of Price, . . . . .	91	L, a liquid, . . . . .	2
— with Sum, . . . . .	96, 97	Labials, . . . . .	2
— with Interest, . . . . .	125	Lapis declined, . . . . .	29
— with Adjectives, . . . . .	141	Letters of Latin Alphabet, . . . . .	1
— with Verbs, . . . . .	148	Licet, <i>although</i> , . . . . .	174
— with Adverbs, . . . . .	153	Liquids, . . . . .	2
— with Neuter Adjectives, . . . . .	153	Locative Case, . . . . .	20, 27
— with Pronouns, . . . . .	153	M, a nasal, . . . . .	2
Gerunds, . . . . .	55	Magister declined, . . . . .	13
Gerundive, . . . . .	56	Malo conjugated, . . . . .	99
Grus declined, . . . . .	40	Mare declined, . . . . .	27
Gutturals, . . . . .	2	Memini with Genitive or Accusative, . . . . .	149
H, a strong aspirate, . . . . .	3	Metre, rules of, . . . . .	205
Hexameter Verse, . . . . .	205	Misereror with Genitive, . . . . .	149
Hic declined, . . . . .	71	Miseresco with Genitive, . . . . .	149
Historic Infinitive, . . . . .	192	Misereror with Accusative, . . . . .	149
Historic Tenses, . . . . .	76	Moneo conjugated, . . . . .	99
Hortor conjugated, . . . . .	109	Moneor conjugated, . . . . .	105
I, sounds of, . . . . .	1, 3	Mutes, . . . . .	2
Idem declined, . . . . .	73	N, a nasal, . . . . .	2
Ille declined, . . . . .	72	Narratio obliqua, . . . . .	188
Imperative Mood, . . . . .	5, 58	Ne, . . . . .	75, 168
Imperfect Tenses, . . . . .	6	Ne quidem, . . . . .	195
Impersonal Verbs, . . . . .	123	Ne quis, quid, etc., . . . . .	171
Impleo with Ablative or Genitive, . . . . .	151	Nemo declined, . . . . .	74
In with Accusative, . . . . .	19, 47, 155	Neuter Nouns, . . . . .	15, 35
— with Ablative, . . . . .	19, 47, 162	Ni and Nisi, . . . . .	174
Inchoative Verbs, . . . . .	138	Nolo conjugated, . . . . .	115
Indicative Mood, . . . . .	6, 8	Nomen declined, . . . . .	35
Indigeo with Genitive or Ablative, . . . . .	149	Nominative, . . . . .	16
Indirect Questions, . . . . .	78	Nostras, . . . . .	4
Infinitive Mood, . . . . .	5, 53	Noun, . . . . .	186
Inflexions, . . . . .	5	Nouns, Declension of, . . . . .	9
Infra, . . . . .	156	Nubes declined, . . . . .	25
<i>I</i> -Nouns, . . . . .	24	Numbers of Nouns, . . . . .	10
Inquam conjugated, . . . . .	136	Numerals, . . . . .	84
Inter, . . . . .	47, 156	O, sound of, . . . . .	1
Interest with Genitive, . . . . .	125	O-nouns, . . . . .	12
Interjections, . . . . .	62	Ob, . . . . .	47, 157
Intra, . . . . .	47, 156	Object, . . . . .	5
Intransitive Verbs, . . . . .	4	Objective Genitive, . . . . .	50
Ipse declined, . . . . .	73	Oblique Narration, . . . . .	188
Irregular forms of comparison, . . . . .	79		
Irregular Verbs, . . . . .	118		
Is declined, . . . . .	68		

	PAGE		PAGE
Obliviscor with genitive or accusative, . . . . .	149	Q, a guttural mute, . . . . .	2
Odi conjugated, . . . . .	126	Qualis—Talis, . . . . .	186
P, a labial mute, . . . . .	2	Quamquam, . . . . .	174
Particles Inseparable, . . . . .	167	Quamvis, . . . . .	174
Participles, . . . . .	37	Quando, . . . . .	173
Participles with genitive, . . . . .	142	Quandoquidem, . . . . .	173
Partior conjugated, . . . . .	112	Quantity, rules of, . . . . .	200
Passive Voice, . . . . .	102	Quantus—Tantus, . . . . .	186
Passive Verbs, . . . . .	108	Quasi, . . . . .	175
Pater declined, . . . . .	27	Quemadmodum, . . . . .	175
Patrior conjugated, . . . . .	113	Questions, Direct, . . . . .	77
Penes, . . . . .	157	Questions, Indirect, . . . . .	78
Per, . . . . .	47, 157	Qui declined, . . . . .	69
Perfect Tenses, . . . . .	6, 43	—Agreement with antecedent, . . . . .	69
Periods in Latin, . . . . .	198	—Uses of, . . . . .	178
Plerique declined, . . . . .	74	Quia and Quod, because, . . . . .	173
Pone, . . . . .	158	Quicumque, . . . . .	183
Porta declined, . . . . .	10	Quidam, . . . . .	183
Possum conjugated, . . . . .	95	Quidem, position of, in sentence, . . . . .	194
Post, . . . . .	47, 158	Quilibet, . . . . .	183
Postquam, . . . . .	90, 173	Quinam and Quisnam, . . . . .	183
Prae, . . . . .	168	Quin, . . . . .	168, 170
Præter, . . . . .	47, 158	Quin=qui non, . . . . .	183
Præteritives, . . . . .	126	Quis, Interrogative, . . . . .	70
Predicate, . . . . .	4	Quis, Indefinite, . . . . .	71
Prepositions, . . . . .	19, 47, 154	Quispiam, . . . . .	183
— with Accusative, . . . . .	154	Quisquam, . . . . .	184
— with Ablative, . . . . .	160	Quisque, . . . . .	184
— in Composition, . . . . .	165	Quisquis, . . . . .	184
Price, . . . . .	91	Quivis, . . . . .	183
Primary Tenses, . . . . .	76	Quo, . . . . .	166
Principal Parts of Verbs, . . . . .	127	Quo—Eo, . . . . .	166
Prisquam, . . . . .	90, 173	Quoad, . . . . .	173
Pro, . . . . .	47, 163	Quod and Quia, . . . . .	173
Procul, . . . . .	163	Quoniam, . . . . .	168, 173
Pronoun, . . . . .	4	Quoque, . . . . .	66
Pronouns, Personal, . . . . .	67	Quoque, position of, in sentence, . . . . .	194
— Reflexive, . . . . .	67	Quot—Tot, . . . . .	186
— Possessive, . . . . .	68	Quotes, . . . . .	173
— Conjunctive, . . . . .	68	Quum, . . . . .	89
— Interrogative, . . . . .	70		
— Indefinite, . . . . .	71	R, a liquid, . . . . .	3
— Demonstrative, . . . . .	71	Recens declined, . . . . .	38
— Compound, . . . . .	183	Refert, with meâ, etc., . . . . .	135
Pronominal Adjectives, . . . . .	74	Reflexive Pronoun, . . . . .	67
Prope, . . . . .	159	Rego conjugated, . . . . .	100
Propter, . . . . .	47, 159	Regor conjugated, . . . . .	106
Prosody, . . . . .	200	Relative, uses of, . . . . .	178
Protasis, . . . . .	175	Relative clauses, . . . . .	181
Puer declined, . . . . .	13	Relative connecting sentences, . . . . .	181
		Res declined, . . . . .	43
		Roman Calendar, . . . . .	91

	PAGE		PAGE
S, a spirant, . . . . .	3	Tenses, Historic, . . . . .	76
Scriba declined, . . . . .	12	— Imperfect, . . . . .	6, 7
Sentence, Simple forms of, . . . . .	5	— Perfect, . . . . .	6, 45
— Expanded, . . . . .	52	— Primary, . . . . .	76
Sentence, Compound, . . . . .	63	— Sequence of, . . . . .	76
— Co-ordinate, . . . . .	63	Tener declined, . . . . .	21
— Final, . . . . .	75	Tenus, . . . . .	164
Sequence of Tenses, . . . . .	76	Time, . . . . .	87
Si, . . . . .	174, 175	Tot—Quot, . . . . .	186
Sicut, . . . . .	175	Trans, . . . . .	47, 160
Signum declined, . . . . .	13	Transitive Verb, . . . . .	4
Simul, Conjunction, . . . . .	173	Tres declined, . . . . .	85
Simul, Preposition, . . . . .	164	Tristis declined, . . . . .	28
Sine with Subjunctive, . . . . .	169	Tu declined, . . . . .	67
Sine, Preposition, . . . . .	47, 164		
Siquidem, . . . . .	172	U, Sound of, . . . . .	1, 3
Soror declined, . . . . .	29	U-Nouns, . . . . .	40, 42
Space, . . . . .	86	Ubi, . . . . .	173
Stem, . . . . .	5	Ullus declined, . . . . .	74
Sub with Accusative, . . . . .	47, 159	Ultra, . . . . .	160
— with Ablative, . . . . .	47, 164	Unipersonal Verbs, . . . . .	123
Subject of Sentence, . . . . .	5	Unus declined, . . . . .	85
Subjective Genitive, . . . . .	50	Unusquisque, . . . . .	184
Subjunctive Mood, . . . . .	59	Ut, when, . . . . .	89, 173
— in Simple Sentence, . . . . .	61	Ut, final, . . . . .	168
— with Final Sentence, . . . . .	75	Uti, final, . . . . .	168
— with Consecutive Sen- tence, . . . . .	75	Ut, consecutive, . . . . .	170
— in Questions, . . . . .	183	Ut nemo, nullus, etc., . . . . .	171
— in Relative Clause, . . . . .	182	Ut, although, . . . . .	174
Subordinative Conjunctions, . . . . .	168	Ut, as, . . . . .	175
Subter, . . . . .	47, 160	Ut—Ita, . . . . .	186
Sui declined, . . . . .	67	Uterlibet, . . . . .	185
Sum conjugated, . . . . .	94	Uterque, . . . . .	185
— Compounds of, . . . . .	95	Utervis, . . . . .	185
— with Genitive, . . . . .	96	Utor conjugated, . . . . .	111
— with Dative, . . . . .	97		
— with Ablative, . . . . .	96	V, Sound of, . . . . .	3
Sunt qui putant, . . . . .	181	Value, . . . . .	91
Super with Accusative, . . . . .	47, 160	Velut, . . . . .	175
— with Ablative, . . . . .	47, 164	Verb, . . . . .	4
Supines, . . . . .	54	Verbs, Active, . . . . .	6, 98
Supine-stem, . . . . .	55	— Passive, . . . . .	102
Supra, . . . . .	160	— Deponent, . . . . .	108
Sus declined, . . . . .	40	— Unipersonal, . . . . .	123
		— Defective, . . . . .	125
T, a dental, . . . . .	2	— Table of, . . . . .	127
Talis—Qualis, . . . . .	186	— Copulative, . . . . .	146
Tam—Quam, . . . . .	186	— with Genitive, . . . . .	148
Tamquam, . . . . .	175	— with two Accusatives, . . . . .	147
Tantus—Quantus, . . . . .	186	— with Dative, . . . . .	149
Temporal Conjunctions, . . . . .	88	— with Ablative, . . . . .	150

	PAGE		PAGE
Verbs in <i>io</i> , . . . . .	102	Volo conjugated, . . . . .	115
Verbal Nouns, . . . . .	53	Vowel Sounds, . . . . .	1
— Adjectives, . . . . .	56		
Vereor conjugated, . . . . .	110	W, not a Latin letter, . . . . .	1
Vereor <i>na</i> , . . . . .	169	X, a double letter, . . . . .	3
Vereor <i>ut</i> , . . . . .	169	Y, in words from the Greek, . . . . .	3
Vero, Position of, in Sentence, . . . . .	104	Z, in words from the Greek, . . . . .	3
Versus, . . . . .	160		
Vir declined, . . . . .	13		
Vocative, . . . . .	19		

Edinburgh University Press:

T. AND A. CONSTABLE, PRINTERS TO HER MAJESTY.

3, WATERLOO PLACE, PALL MALL.  
October, 1875.

## Books for Schools and Colleges

PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS. RIVINGTON

### HISTORY

## *An English History for the Use of Public Schools.*

*By the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College,  
and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford;  
late Master of the Modern School in Marlborough College.*

With numerous Maps and Plans. Crown 8vo.

This work is divided into three Periods of convenient and handy size, especially adapted for use in Schools, as well as for Students reading special portions of History for local and other Examinations. It will also be issued in one complete Volume.

- Period I.—MEDIÆVAL MONARCHY: The departure of the Romans, to Richard III. From A.D. 449 to A.D. 1485. 4s. 6d. [*Now Ready.*]  
Period II.—PERSONAL MONARCHY: Henry VII. to James II. From A.D. 1485 to A.D. 1688. [*In December.*]  
Period III.—CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY: William and Mary, to the present time. From A.D. 1688 to A.D. 1837. [*In the press.*]

About five years ago, after a meeting of a considerable number of Public School Masters, it was proposed to the Author that he should write a School History of England. As the suggestion was generally supported he undertook the task. The work was intended to supply some deficiencies felt to exist in the School Books which were at that time procurable. It was hoped that the work would be completed in three years, but a series of untoward events has postponed its completion till now. The Author has attempted to embody, in the present publication, so much of the fruit of many years' historical reading, and of considerable experience in teaching history, as he believes will be useful in rendering the study at once an instructive and an interesting pursuit for boys. Starting from the supposition that his readers know but little of the subject, he has tried to give a plain narrative of events, and at the same time so far to trace their connection, causes, and effects, as to supply the student with a more reasonable and intelligent idea of the course of English History than is given by any mere compendium of facts. It has been thought convenient to retain the ordinary divisions into reigns, and to follow primarily, throughout, the Political History of the country; at the same time considerable care has been given to bring out the great Social Changes which have occurred from time to time, and to follow the growth of the people and nation at large, as well as that of the Monarchy or of special classes. A considerable number of genealogies of the leading Houses of the 14th and 15th centuries have been introduced to illustrate that period. The later periods are related at considerably greater length than the earlier ones. The foreign events in which England took part have been, as far as space allowed, brought into due prominence; while by the addition of numerous maps and plans, in which every name mentioned will be found, it is hoped that reference to a separate atlas will be found unnecessary. The marginal analysis has been collected at the beginning of the volume, so as to form an abstract of the History, suitable for the use of those who are beginning the study.

(See Specimen Page, No. 1.)

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

# HISTORICAL HANDBOOKS

*Edited by*

OSCAR BROWNING, M.A.,

FELLOW OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; ASSISTANT-MASTER AT ETON COLLEGE.

Small 8vo.

(See Specimen Pages, Nos. 3 and 4.)

## HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH INSTITUTIONS.

By PHILIP V. SMITH, M.A., *Barrister-at-Law; Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.* 3s. 6d.

### CONTENTS.

**Social and Local Development of the Constitution,**

Origin of the English Institutions--The People--Local Government.

**Constituents of the Central Authority.**

The King--Parliament--The King's Council.

**Central Government.**

Legislation--Judicature--The Executive--Taxation--Chronological Table.  
Index and Glossary.

"It contains in a short compass an amount of information not otherwise accessible to students without considerable research. The chapter on Local Government in particular is well executed. It would be hard to name any other book in which

the history of our local institutions, from the Gemots of the first Teutonic settlers down to the County Court, the Local Government Board, and the School Board of our own day, is to be found."--*Athenaeum*.

## HISTORY OF FRENCH LITERATURE.

*Adapted from the French of M. DEMOGÈTE, by C. BRIDGE.*  
3s. 6d.

"An excellent manual."--*Athenaeum*.  
"A clever adaptation."--*London Quarterly Review*.

"It is clear, idiomatic, and flowing, possessing all the characteristics of good English composition. Its perusal will furnish abundant evidence of the richness and variety of French literature, of which it is

a good and sufficient handbook."--*British Quarterly Review*.

"We cannot too highly commend this careful analysis of the characteristics of the great French writer."--*Standard*.

"Unlike most manuals, it is readable as well as accurate."--*Echo*.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## HISTORICAL HANDBOOKS—continued.

## THE ROMAN EMPIRE. A.D. 395–800.

By A. M. CURTEIS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Sherborne School,  
late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

With Maps. 3s. 6d.

## CONTENTS.

Administrative and Legal Unity—The Christian Church in the First Four Centuries—The Barbarians on the Frontier—Century IV.—Church and State in Constantinople, Eutropius and Chrysostom—Chrysostom and the Empress Eudoxia—Alaric and the Visigoths, 396–419—Genseric and the Vandals, 423–533—Attila and the Huns, 435–453—The “Change of Government,” commonly called the Fall of the Western Empire, 475–526—The Emperor Justinian, 527–565—The Empire in relation to the Barbarians of the East, 450–650—Mohammed and Mohammedanism, 622–711—The Popes and the Lombards in Italy, 540–740—The Franks and the Papacy, 500–800—Synopsis of Historical Events—Index.

## MAPS.

Central Europe, about A.D. 400.—The Roman Empire at the beginning of the sixth Century.—Italy, 600–750.—Europe in the time of Charles the Great.

“We have very carefully examined the chapters on the ‘Barbarians,’ the Visigoths, the Vandals, and the Huns, and can pronounce them the best condensed account that we have read of the westerly migrations.”—*Athenæum*.

“An admirable specimen of careful condensation and good arrangement, and as a school book it will assuredly possess a high value.”—*Scotsman*.

“In this excellent and useful volume is condensed the history of four centuries. To most readers it is a history that is little known, and we may say to all readers that there is no history better worth knowing or more necessary to be studied.”—*Notes and Queries*.

“He shows, when the narrow limits of his space allow him a little freedom, felicity

of expression, discernment into character, and that curious delicacy of judgment which marks the man of taste as well as the scholar.”—*Educational Times*.

“The period with which it deals is neglected in schools for want of text-books, but is full of most important historical teaching. Mr. Curteis’ little book is admirably written for teaching purposes; it is clear, definite, well-arranged, and interesting.”—*Academy*.

“Appears to be a good school book for the higher forms.”—*Westminster Review*.

“Will prove of great service to students, and we commend it to the notice of those who intend competing in the Civil Service Examinations. Mr. Curteis has executed his task with great care and judgment.”

*Civil Service Gazette.*

## HISTORY OF MODERN ENGLISH LAW.

By Sir ROLAND KNYVET WILSON, Bart., M.A., Barrister-at-Law;  
late Fellow of King’s College, Cambridge.

3s. 6d.

## ENGLISH HISTORY IN THE XIVTH CENTURY.

By CHARLES H. PEARSON, M.A., Principal of the Presbyterian Ladies’ College, Melbourne, late Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, and Professor of History in the University of Melbourne.

[In the Press.]

[HISTORICAL HANDBOOKS—Continued.]

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.



---

HISTORICAL HANDBOOKS—continued.

THE GREAT REBELLION.

*By the EDITOR.*

HISTORY OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

*By the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College, and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford; late Master of the Modern School at Marlborough College.*

THE AGE OF CHATHAM.

*By Sir W. R. ANSON, Bart., M.A., Fellow of All Souls' College, and Vinerian Reader of Law, Oxford.*

THE AGE OF PITT.

*By the Same.*

THE REIGN OF LOUIS XI.

*By F. WILLERT, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Exeter College, Oxford.*

THE SUPREMACY OF ATHENS.

*By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.*

THE ROMAN REVOLUTION. From B.C. 133 to the  
Battle of Actium.

*By H. F. PELHAM, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Exeter College, Oxford.*

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

*By Sir GEORGE YOUNG, BART., M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

HISTORY OF ROMAN POLITICAL INSTITUTIONS.

*By J. S. REID, M.L., Christ's College, Cambridge.*

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

*In preparation***HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHIES***Edited by*

THE REV. M. CREIGHTON, M.A.,

FELLOW AND TUTOR OF MERTON COLLEGE, OXFORD,

With Frontispiece and Maps.

The most important and the most difficult point in Historical Teaching is to awaken a real interest in the minds of Beginners. For this purpose concise handbooks are seldom useful. General sketches, however accurate in their outlines of political or constitutional development, and however well adapted to dispel false ideas, still do not make history a living thing to the *young*. They are most valuable as maps on which to trace the route beforehand and show its direction, but they will seldom allure any one to take a walk.

The object of this series of Historical Biographies is to try and select from English History a few men whose lives were lived in stirring times. The intention is to treat their lives and times in some little detail, and to group round them the most distinctive features of the periods before and after those in which they lived.

It is hoped that in this way interest may be awakened without any sacrifice of accuracy, and that personal sympathies may be kindled without forgetfulness of the principles involved.

It may be added that round the lives of individuals it will be possible to bring together facts of social life in a clearer way, and to reproduce a more vivid picture of particular times than is possible in a historical handbook.

By reading Short Biographies a few clear ideas may be formed in the pupil's mind, which may stimulate to further reading. A vivid impression of one period, however short, will carry the pupil onward and give more general histories an interest in their turn. Something, at least, will be gained if the pupil realises that men in past times lived and moved in the same sort of way as they do at present.

It is proposed to issue the following Biographies adapted to the reading of pupils between the ages of 12 and 15:

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. SIMON DE MONTFORT.  | 5. THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH. |
| 2. THE BLACK PRINCE.   | 6. WILLIAM PITT,            |
| 3. SIR WALTER RALEIGH. | or, THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON. |
| 4. OLIVER CROMWELL.    |                             |

---

*History of the Church under the  
Roman Empire, A.D. 30-476.*

*By the Rev. A. D. CRAKE, B.A., Chaplain of All Saints' School,  
Bloxham.*

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

---

*A History of England for Children.*

*By GEORGE DAVYS, D.D., formerly Bishop of Peterborough.*

New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

With twelve Coloured Illustrations. Square cr. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

# ENGLISH

## ENGLISH SCHOOL-CLASSICS

*With Introductions, and Notes at the end of each Book.*

Edited by FRANCIS STORR, B.A.,

CHIEF MASTER OF MODERN SUBJECTS IN MERCHANT TAYLORS' SCHOOL, LATE SCHOLAR  
OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND BELL UNIVERSITY SCHOLAR.

*Small 8vo.*

### THOMSON'S SEASONS: Winter.

With Introduction to the Series, by the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College, and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford; late Master of the Modern School at Marlborough College. 1s.

### COWPER'S TASK.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School. 2s.

Part I. (Book I.—The Sofa; Book II.—The Timepiece) 9d. Part II. (Book III.—The Garden; Book IV.—The Winter Evening) 9d. Part III. (Book V.—The Winter Morning Walk; Book VI.—The Winter Walk at Noon) 9d.

### SCOTT'S LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.

By J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head Master of Bedford School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford. 2s. 6d.

Part I. (Canto I., with Introduction, &c.) 9d. Part II. (Cantos II. and III.) 9d. Part III. (Cantos IV. and V.) 9d. Part IV. (Canto VI.) 9d.

### SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.

By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School. 2s.

Part I. (Cantos I. and II.) 9d. Part II. (Cantos III. and IV.) 9d. Part III. (Cantos V. and VI.) 9d.

### NOTES TO SCOTT'S WAVERLEY.

By H. W. EVE, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College.

### TWENTY OF BACON'S ESSAYS.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School. 1s.

### SIMPLE POEMS.

Edited by W. E. MULLINS, M.A. Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 8d.

### SELECTIONS FROM WORDSWORTH'S POEMS.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

### WORDSWORTH'S EXCURSION: The Wanderer.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

### MILTON'S PARADISE LOST.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School.

Book I. 9d. Book II. 9d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS—continued.

## SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR.

By OSMUND AIRY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College. 1s.

## BROWNE'S RELIGIO MEDIOR.

By W. P. SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Winchester College. 1s.

## GOLDSMITH'S TRAVELLER AND DESERTED VILLAGE.

By C. SANKEY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 1s.

## GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD.

By C. SANKEY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College.

## SELECTIONS FROM BURNS' POEMS.

By A. M. BELL, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford.

## MACAULAY'S ESSAYS.

MOORE'S LIFE OF BYRON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

HALLAM'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY. By H. F. BOYD, late Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 1s.

## SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College.

"." *The General Introduction to the Series will be found in Thomson's WINTER.*

(See Specimen Pages, Nos. 5 and 6.)

## OPINIONS OF TUTORS AND SCHOOLMASTERS.

"Nothing can be better than the idea and the execution of the English School-Classics, edited by Mr. Storr. Their cheapness and excellence encourage us to the hope that the study of our own language, too long neglected in our schools, may take its proper place in our curriculum, and may be the means of inspiring that taste for literature which it is one of the chief objects of education to give, and which is apt to be lost sight of in the modern style of teaching Greek and Latin Classics with a view to success in examinations."—*Oscar Browning, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Eton College.*

"I think the plan of them is excellent; and those volumes which I have used I have found carefully and judiciously edited, neither passing over difficulties, nor preventing thought and work on the pupil's part by excessive annotation."—*Rev. C. B. Hutchinson, M.A., Assistant-Master in Rugby School.*

"I think that these books are likely to prove most valuable. There is great variety in the choice of authors. The notes seem sensible, as far as I have been able to examine them, and give just enough help, and not too much; and the size of each volume is so small, that in most cases it need not form more than one term's work.

Something of the kind was greatly wanted."—*E. E. Bowen, M.A., Master of the Modern Side, Harrow School.*

"I have used some of the volumes of your English School-Classics for several months in my ordinary form work, and I have recommended others to be set as subjects for different examinations for which the boys have to prepare themselves. I shall certainly continue to use them, as I have found them to be very well suited to the wants of my form."—*C. M. Bull, M.A., Master of the Modern School in Marlborough College.*

"I have no hesitation in saying that the volumes of your Series which I have examined appear to me far better adapted for school use than any others which have come under my notice. The notes are sufficiently full to supply all the information which a boy needs to understand the text without superseding the necessity of his thinking. The occasional questions call the learner's attention to points which he can decide from his own resources. The general plan, and the execution of the volumes which have come before me, leave little to be desired in a School Edition of the English Classics."—*The Rev. Chas. Grant Chittenden, M.A., The Grange, Hoddesdon, Herts.*

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## SELECT PLAYS OF SHAKSPERE

RUGBY EDITION.

With an Introduction and Notes to each Play.

Small 8vo.

AS YOU LIKE IT. 2s. HAMLET. 2s. 6d.

MACBETH. 2s.

*Edited by the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School, and formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.*

CORIOLANUS. 2s. 6d.

*Edited by ROBERT WHITELAW, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

THE TEMPEST.

*Edited by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head-Master of Bedford Grammar School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.*

With Notes at the end of the Volume. [In the press.

THE MERCHANT OF VENICE.

*Edited by R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.*

With Notes at the end of the Volume.

[In preparation.

## *English Grammar for English Schoolboys.*

An Introduction to English Etymology and Accidence, Syntax and Analysis, Style and Prosody.

*By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School.*

Small 8vo.

[In preparation.

## *A Practical Introduction to English Prose Composition.*

An English Grammar for Classical Schools, with Questions, and a Course of Exercises.

*By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.*

Tenth Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

# MATHEMATICS

## RIVINGTONS' MATHEMATICAL SERIES

The following Schools, amongst many others, use this Series:—  
 Eton: Harrow: Winchester: Charterhouse: Marlborough: Shrewsbury:  
 Cheltenham: Clifton: City of London School: Haileybury: Tonbridge:  
 Durham: Fettes College, Edinburgh: Owen's College, Manchester: H.M.'s  
 Dockyard School, Sheerness: Hurstpierpoint: King William's College,  
 Isle of Man: St. Peter's, Clifton, York: Birmingham: Bedford: Felsted:  
 Christ's College, Finchley: Liverpool College: Windermere College:  
 Eastbourne College: Brentwood: Perse School, Cambridge. Also in use  
 in Canada: H.M. Training Ships: Royal Naval College, Greenwich:  
 Melbourne University, Australia: the other Colonies: and some of the  
 Government Schools in India.

### OPINIONS OF TUTORS AND SCHOOLMASTERS.

"A person who carefully studies these books will have a thorough and accurate knowledge of the subjects on which they treat."—*H. A. Morgan, M.A., Tutor of Jesus College, Cambridge.*

"We have for some time used your Mathematical books in our Lecture Room, and find them well arranged, and well calculated to clear up the difficulties of the subjects. The examples also are numerous and well-selected."—*N. M. Ferrers, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.*

"I have used in my Lecture Room Mr. Hamblin Smith's text-books with very great advantage."—*James Porter, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.*

"For beginners there could be no better books, as I have found when examining different schools."—*A. W. W. Steel, M.A., Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.*

"I consider Mr. Hamblin Smith's Mathematical Works to be a very valuable series for beginners. His Algebra in particular I think is the best book of its kind for schools and for the ordinary course at Cambridge."

*F. Patrick, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Cambridge.*

"The series is a model of clearness and insight into possible difficulties."—*Rev. J. F. Blake, St. Peter's College, Clifton, York.*

"I can say with pleasure that I have used your books extensively in my work at

Haileybury, and have found them on the whole well adapted for boys."—*Thomas Pitts, M.A., Assistant Mathematical Master at Haileybury College.*

"I can strongly recommend them all."—*W. Henry, M.A., Sub-Warden, Trinity College, Glenalmond.*

"I consider Mr. Smith has supplied a great want, and cannot but think that his works must command extensive use in good schools."—*J. Henry, B.A., Head-Master, H.M. Dockyard School, Sheerness, and Instructor of Engineers, R.N.*

"We have used your Algebra and Trigonometry extensively at this School from the time they were first published, and I thoroughly agree with every mathematical teacher I have met, that, as school text-books, they have no equals. We are introducing your Euclid gradually into the School."—*Rev. B. Edwards, sen., Mathematical Master at the College, Hurstpierpoint, Sussex.*

"I consider them to be the best books of their kind on the subject which I have yet seen."—*Joshua Jones, D.C.L., Head-Master, King William's College, Isle of Man.*

"I have very great pleasure in expressing an opinion as to the value of these books. I have used them under very different circumstances, and have always been satisfied with the results obtained."—*C. H. W. Biggs, Mathematical Editor of the 'English Mechanic,' Editor of the 'Monthly Journal of Education.'*

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## RIVINGTONS' MATHEMATICAL SERIES—continued.

## ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A., of Gonville and Caius College, and  
late Lecturer at St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

12mo. 3s. Without Answers, 2s. 6d.

## A KEY TO ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA.

Crown 8vo. 9s.

## EXERCISES ON ALGEBRA.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 2s. 6d.

Copies may be had without the Answers.

## ALGEBRA. Part II.

By E. J. GROSS, M.A., Fellow of Gonville and Caius College,  
Cambridge.

Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

"We have to congratulate Mr. Gross on his excellent treatment of the more difficult chapters in Elementary Algebra. His work satisfies not only in every respect the requirements of a first-rate text-book on the subject, but is not open to the standing reproach of most English mathematical treatises for students, a minimum of teaching and a maximum of problems. The hard work and considerable thought which Mr. Gross has devoted to the book will be seen on every page by the experienced teacher; there is not a word too much, nor is the student left without genuine assistance where it is needful. The lan-

guage is precise, clear, and to the point. The problems are not too numerous, and selected with much tact and judgment. The range of the book has been very rightly somewhat extended beyond that assigned to simpler treatises, and it includes the elementary principles of Determinants. This chapter especially will be read with satisfaction by earnest students, and the mode of exposition will certainly have the approval of teachers. Altogether we think that this *Algebra* will soon become a general text-book, and will remain so for a long time to come." — *Westminster Review*.

## KINEMATICS AND KINETICS.

By E. J. GROSS, M.A.

Crown 8vo.

[Just ready.]

## A TREATISE ON ARITHMETIC.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 3s. 6d.

(See Specimen Page, No. 7.)

## A KEY TO ARITHMETIC.

Crown 8vo.

[In the Press.]

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

RIVINGTONS' MATHEMATICAL SERIES—continued.

ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 3s. 6d.

Containing Books I to 6, and portions of Books II and 12, of EUCLID, with Exercises and Notes, arranged with the Abbreviations admitted in the Cambridge Examinations.

Part I., containing Books I and 2 of Euclid, limp cloth, 1s. 6d., may be had separately.

(See Specimen Page, No. 8.)

GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS.

By G. RICHARDSON, M.A., Assistant-Master at Winchester College, and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

TRIGONOMETRY.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 4s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY STATICS.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 3s.

ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

12mo. 3s.

BOOK OF ENUNCIATIONS

FOR HAMBLIN SMITH'S GEOMETRY, ALGEBRA, TRIGONOMETRY, STATICS, AND HYDROSTATICS.

12mo. 1s.

---

*Arithmetic, Theoretical and Practical.*

By W. H. GIRDLESTONE, M.A., of Christ's College, Cambridge, Principal of the Theological College, Gloucester.

New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

Also a School Edition. Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.



# SCIENCE

*Preparing for Publication,*

## SCIENCE CLASS-BOOKS

*Edited by*

The REV. ARTHUR RIGG, M.A.,

LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE COLLEGE, CHESTER.

*These Volumes are designed expressly for School use, and by their especial reference to the requirements of a School Class-Book, aim at making Science-teaching a subject for regular and methodical study in Public and Private Schools.*

### AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK ON SOUND.

*By* GEORGE CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.R.S., *Fellow of, and Professor of Physics in, University College, London.*

### AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK ON ELECTRICITY.

*By* GEORGE CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.R.S., *Fellow of, and Professor of Physics in, University College, London.*

### BOTANY FOR CLASS-TEACHING.

With Exercises for Private Work.

*By* F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., F.L.S., *Assistant-Master at Rugby School, and late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

### ASTRONOMY FOR CLASS-TEACHING.

With Exercises for Private Work.

*By* WALLIS HAY LAVERTY, M.A., *late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

The knowledge of Mathematics assumed will be Euclid, Books I.-VI., and Quadratic Equations.

*Other Works are in preparation.*

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *A Year's Botany.*

Adapted to Home and School Use.

By FRANCES ANNA KITCHENER.

Illustrated by the Author. Crown 8vo. 5s.

(See Specimen Page, No. 2.)

### CONTENTS.

General Description of Flowers—Flowers with Simple Pistils—Flowers with Compound Pistils—Flowers with Apocarpous Fruits—Flowers with Syncarpous Fruits—Stamens and Morphology of Branches—Fertilisation—Seeds—Early Growth and Food of Plants—Wood, Stems, and Roots—Leaves—Classification—Umbellates, Composites, Spurges, and Pines—Some Monocotyledonous Families—Orchids—Appendix of Technical Terms—Index.

## *An Easy Introduction to Chemistry.*

For the use of Schools.

Edited by the Rev. ARTHUR RIGG, M.A., late Principal of The College, Chester, and WALTER T. GOOLDEN, B.A., late Science Scholar of Merton College, Oxford.

New Edition, considerably altered and revised.

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

(See Specimen Page, No. 9.)

"We seldom come across a work of such simplicity in chemistry as this. It ought to be in the hands of every student of chemistry."—*Chemical Review*.

"There are a simplicity and a clearness in the description and explanations given in this little volume which certainly commend it to the attention of the young."

*Athenæum*.

## *Notes on Building Construction.*

Arranged to meet the requirements of the syllabus of the Science and Art Department of the Committee of Council on Education, South Kensington Museum.

PART I.—FIRST STAGE, OR ELEMENTARY COURSE.

Medium 8vo, with 325 woodcuts, 10s. 6d.

"Something of the sort was very much needed. A book distilling the substance of larger works and putting the outlines of constructional science together in a small compass, is a very important aid to students. A very useful little book."—*Builder*.

"The text is prepared in an extremely simple and consecutive manner, advancing from rudimental and general statements to those which are comparatively advanced; it is a thoroughly coherent, self-sustained account."—*Athenæum*.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## LATIN

### *Elementary Rules of Latin Pronunciation.*

Especially drawn up for use in Schools.

By ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., *late Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall, Editor of "Catena Classicorum."*

Crown 8vo. On a card, 9d.

### *Outlines of Latin Sentence Construction.*

By E. D. MANSFIELD, B.A., *Assistant-Master at Clifton College.*

Demy 8vo. On a card, 1s.

### *Easy Exercises in Latin Prose.*

With Notes.

By CHARLES BIGG, M.A., *Principal of Brighton College.*

Small 8vo. 1s. 4d.; sewed, 9d.

### *Latin Prose Exercises.*

For Beginners, and Junior Forms of Schools.

By R. PROWSE SMITH, B.A., *Assist.-Master at Cheltenham College.*

[This Book can be used with or without the PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.] New Edition, Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"This is certainly an improvement on the grammar-school method, and may be a step in the way of teaching English before Latin."—*Examiner*.

"The plan upon which these exercises are founded is decidedly a good one, and none the less so that it is a very simple one."—*Educational Times*.

"This book differs from others of the same class in containing lessons in English

to assist beginners in doing the Latin exercises. We quite agree with Mr. Smith as to the necessity of some knowledge of English and the principles of Grammar, as a qualification for writing Latin Prose correctly. His explanation of the more difficult constructions and idioms is very distinct, and altogether the book is highly satisfactory."—*Athenæum*.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *Henry's First Latin Book.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Twenty-second Edition. 12mo. 3s. Tutor's Key, 1s.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books* by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

## *A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixteenth Edition. 8vo. 6s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.

## *Cornelius Nepos.*

With Critical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. 4s.

## *A First Verse Book.*

Being an Easy Introduction to the Mechanism of the Latin Hexameter and Pentameter.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Eleventh Edition. 12mo. 2s. Tutor's Key, 1s.

## *Progressive Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse.*

By C. G. GEPP, B.A., late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford; Head-Master of the College, Stratford-on-Avon.

Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 5s.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books* by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

## *Selections from Livy, Books VIII. and IX.*

With Notes and Map.

By E. CALVERT, LL.D., St. John's College, Cambridge; and R. SAWARD, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master in Shrewsbury School.

Small 8vo. 2s.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

*New Edition, re-arranged, with fresh Pieces and additional References.*

## *Materials and Models for Latin Prose Composition.*

*Selected and arranged by J. Y. SARGENT, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Oxford; and T. F. DALLIN, M.A., Tutor, late Fellow, of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

(See Specimen Page, No. 10.)

## *Latin Version of (60) Selected Pieces from Materials and Models.*

*By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A.*

Crown 8vo. 5s.

May be had by Tutors only, on direct application to the Publishers.

## *Stories from Ovid in Elegiac Verse.*

*With Notes for School Use and Marginal References to the PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.*

*By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School, late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.*

Small 8vo.

[Now Ready.]

(See Specimen Pages, Nos. 11 and 12.)

## *The Æneid of Virgil.*

*Edited, with Notes at the end, by FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School.*

BOOKS XI and XII each separately.

Crown 8vo.

[Now Ready.]

(See Specimen Pages, Nos. 13 and 14.)

## *Classical Examination Papers.*

*Edited, with Notes and References, by P. J. F. GANTILLON, M.A., Classical Master in Cheltenham College.*

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Or interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound, 10s. 6d.

## *Eclogæ Ovidianæ.*

*From the Elegiac Poems. With English Notes.*

*By THOMAS KERCHER ARNOLD, M.A.*

Thirteenth Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

*Terenti Comoediae.*

*Edited by T. L. PAPILLON, M.A., Fellow of New College, and late Fellow of Merton, Oxford.*

ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS. 4s. 6d.

ANDRIA. New Edition, with Introduction on Prosody. 3s. 6d.  
Crown 8vo.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

*Juvenalis Satirae.*

*Edited by G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*  
THIRTEEN SATIRES.

Second Edition, enlarged and revised. Crown 8vo. 5s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

*Persii Satirae.*

*Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A., of Trinity College, Cambridge, Classical Lecturer of Trinity Hall, Composition Lecturer of the Perse Grammar School, Cambridge.*

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

*Horati Opera.*

*By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Under-Master in Dulwich College.*  
VOL. I.—THE ODES, CARMEN SECULARE, AND EPODES.

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

*Taciti Historiae.* BOOKS I. and II.

*Edited by W. H. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 6s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

*Taciti Historiae.* BOOKS III. IV. and V.

*Edited by W. H. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo.

[In the Press.]

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## GREEK

### *An Elementary Grammar for the Use of Beginners.*

By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., *Lecturer in Balliol College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master in Clifton College.* [In the Press.

### *Elements of Greek Accidence.*

By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., *Lecturer in Balliol College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master in Clifton College.*

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"This is an excellent book. The compilers of elementary Greek Grammars have not before, so far as we are aware, made full use of the results obtained by the labours of philologists during the last twenty-five years. Mr. Abbott's great merit is that he has; and a comparison between his book and the *Rudimenta* of

the late Dr. Donaldson—a most excellent volume for the time at which it was published—will show how considerable the advance has been; while a comparison with the works in ordinary use, which have never attained anything like the standard reached by Dr. Donaldson, will really surprise the teacher."—*Athenæum*.

### *An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.*

By ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A., *Assistant-Master at Rugby School, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

[In the Press.

### *Zeugma; or, Greek Steps from Primer to Author.*

By the Rev. LANCELOT SANDERSON, M.A., *Principal of Elstree School, late Scholar of Clare College, Cambridge; and the Rev. F. B. FIRMAN, M.A., Assistant-Master at Elstree School, late Scholar of Jesus College, Cambridge.*

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d.

### *A Table of Irregular Greek Verbs.*

Classified according to the arrangement of Curtius's *Greek Grammar*.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., *Chief-Master of Modern Subjects in Merchant Taylors' School, late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Bell University Scholar.*

On a Card. 1s.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *Selections from Lucian.*

With English Notes.

By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., *Lecturer in Balliol College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master in Clifton College.*

Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

## *Alexander the Great in the Punjaub.*

Adapted from Arrian, Book V.

An easy Greek Reading Book, with Notes at the end and a Map.

By the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., *Assistant-Master in Rugby School, and formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.*

Small 8vo. 2s.

## *Stories from Herodotus.*

The Tales of Rhampsinitus and Polycrates, and the Battle of Marathon and the Alcmaeonidae. *In Attic Greek.*

Adapted for use in Schools, by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., *Head Master of Bedford School; formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

## *Iophon: an Introduction to the Art of Writing Greek Iambic Verses.*

By the WRITER of "*Nuces*" and "*Lucretillus*."

Crown 8vo. 2s.

## *The First Greek Book.*

On the plan of *Henry's First Latin Book.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.

## *A Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Ninth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

## *A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Twelfth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.



## SCENES FROM GREEK PLAYS

RUGBY EDITION

*Abridged and adapted for the use of Schools, by*

ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A.,

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT RUGBY SCHOOL, AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF  
TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

*Aristophanes.*

THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

*Euripides.*

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION.

ELECTRA. ALCESTIS. BACCHÆ. HECUBA.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books*, by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Sidgwick has put on the title-pages of these modest little volumes the words 'Rugby Edition,' but we shall be much mistaken if they do not find a far wider circulation. The prefaces or introductions which Mr. Sidgwick has prefixed to his 'Scenes' tell the youthful student all that he need know about the play that he is taking in hand, and the parts chosen are those which give the general scope and drift of the action of the play."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"Each play is printed separately, on good paper, and in a neat and handy form. The difficult passages are explained by the notes appended, which are of a particularly useful and intelligible kind. In all respects this edition presents a very pleasing contrast to the German editions hitherto in general use, with their Latin explanatory notes—themselves often requiring explanation. A new feature in this edition, which deserves mention, is the insertion in English of the stage directions. By means of them and the argument prefixed, the study of the play is much simplified."—*Scotsman*.

"A short preface explains the action of the play in each case, and there are a few notes at the end which will clear up most of the difficulties likely to be met with by the young student."—*Educational Times*.

"Just the book to be put into the hands of boys who are reading Greek plays. They are

carefully and judiciously edited, and form the most valuable aid to the study of the elements of Greek that we have seen for many a day. The Grammatical Indices are especially to be commended."—*Athenæum*.

"These editions afford exactly the kind of help that school-boys require, and are really excellent class-books. The notes, though very brief, are of much use and always to the point, and the arguments and arrangement of the text are equally good in their way."—*Standard*.

"Not professing to give whole dramas, with their customary admixture of iambics, trochaics, and choral odes, as pabulum for learners who can barely digest the level speeches and dialogues commonly confined to the first-named metre, he has arranged extracted scenes with much tact and skill, and set them before the pupil with all needful information in the shape of notes at the end of the book; besides which he has added a somewhat novel, but highly commendable and valuable feature—namely, appropriate headings to the commencement of each scene, and appropriate stage directions during its progress."—*Saturday Review*.

"These are attractive little books, novel in design and admirable in execution. . . . It would hardly be possible to find a better introduction to Aristophanes for a young student than these little books afford."

*London Quarterly Review.*

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *Homer's Iliad.*

*Edited, with Notes at the end, by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A.,  
Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, formerly Fellow of New  
College, Oxford.*

BOOK VI. Crown 8vo.

## *Homer for Beginners.*

ILIAD, Books I.—III. With English Notes.

*By* THOMAS KERSCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fourth Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

## *The Iliad of Homer.*

From the Text of Dindorf. With Preface and Notes.

*By* S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College,  
Oxford.*

Books I.—XII. Crown 8vo. 6s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## *The Iliad of Homer.*

With English Notes and Grammatical References.

*By* THOMAS KERSCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. Half-bound, 12s.

## *A Complete Greek and English Lexicon for the Poems of Homer and the Homeridæ.*

*By* G. CH. CRUSIUS. *Translated from the German. Edited by  
T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.*

New Edition. 12mo. 9s.

*In the Press, New Edition, re-arranged, with fresh Pieces and additional  
References.*

## *Materials and Models for Greek Prose Composition.*

*Selected and arranged by* J. Y. SARGENT, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor  
of Magdalen College, Oxford; and* T. F. DALLIN, M.A., *Tutor, late  
Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo.

## Classical Examination Papers.

*Edited, with Notes and References, by P. J. F. GANTILLON, M.A., sometime Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; Classical Master at Cheltenham College.*

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Or interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound, 10s. 6d.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books*, by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

## Demosthenes.

*Edited, with English Notes and Grammatical References, by THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.*

12mo.

OLYNTIAC ORATIONS. Third Edition. 3s.

PHILIPPIC ORATIONS. Third Edition. 4s.

ORATION ON THE CROWN. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

## Demosthenis Orationes Privatae.

*Edited by ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., late Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.*

Crown 8vo.

DE CORONA. 5s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.

*Edited by G. H. HESLOP, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford; Head-Master of St. Bees.*

Crown 8vo.

OLYNTIACS, 2s. 6d.

PHILIPPICS, 3s.

DE FALSA LEGATIONE, 6s.

} or, in One Volume, 4s. 6d.

*Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## Isocratis Orationes.

*Edited by JOHN EDWIN SANDYS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.*

Crown 8vo.

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS. 4s. 6d.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *The Greek Testament.*

With a Critically Revised Text; a Digest of Various Readings; Marginal References to Verbal and Idiomatic Usage; Prolegomena; and a Critical and Exegetical Commentary. For the use of Theological Students and Ministers.

By HENRY ALFORD, D.D., *late Dean of Canterbury.*

New Edition. 4 vols. 8vo. 102s.

The Volumes are sold separately, as follows:

Vol. I.—THE FOUR GOSPELS. 28s.

Vol. II.—ACTS to 2 CORINTHIANS. 24s.

Vol. III.—GALATIANS to PHILEMON. 18s.

Vol. IV.—HEBREWS to REVELATION. 32s.

## *The Greek Testament.*

With Notes, Introductions, and Index.

By CHR. WORDSWORTH, D.D., *Bishop of Lincoln.*

New Edition. 2 vols. Impl. 8vo. 60s.

The Parts may be had separately, as follows:—

THE GOSPELS. 16s.

THE ACTS. 8s.

St. Paul's EPISTLES. 23s.

GENERAL EPISTLES, REVELATION, and INDEX. 16s.

## *Notes on the Greek Testament.*

By the Rev. ARTHUR CARR, M.A., *Assistant-Master at Wellington College, late Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.*

THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO S. LUKE.

Crown 8vo.

(See Specimen Page, No. 15.)

## *Madvig's Syntax of the Greek Language, especially of the Attic Dialect.*

For the use of Schools.

Edited by THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

New Edition. Imperial 16mo. 8s. 6d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *Sophocles.*

With English Notes from SCHNEIDEWIN.

*Edited by* T. K. ARNOLD, M.A., ARCHDEACON PAUL, *and* HENRY BROWNE, M.A.

12mo.

AJAX. 3s. PHILOCTETES. 3s. ŒDIPUS TYRANNUS. 4s. ŒDIPUS COLONEUS. 4s. ANTIGONE. 4s.

## *Sophoclis Tragoediae.*

*Edited by* R. C. JEBB, M.A., *Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.*

Crown 8vo.

ELECTRA. Second Edition, revised. 3s. 6d.

AJAX. 3s. 6d.

*Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## *Aristophanis Comoediae.*

*Edited by* W. C. GREEN, M.A., *late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Rugby School.*

Crown 8vo.

THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS. 4s.

THE CLOUDS. 3s. 6d.

THE WASPS. 3s. 6d.

An Edition of "THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS," revised and especially prepared for Schools. 4s.

*Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## *Herodoti Historia.*

*Edited by* H. G. WOODS, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo.

BOOK I. 6s. BOOK II. 5s.

*Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."*

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *A Copious Phraseological English-Greek Lexicon.*

*Founded on a work prepared by J. W. FRÄDERSDORFF, Ph.D., late Professor of Modern Languages, Queen's College, Belfast.*

*Revised, Enlarged, and Improved by the late THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A., and HENRY BROWNE, M.A.*

Fourth Edition. 8vo. 21s.

## *Thucydides Historia.* Books I. and II.

*Edited by CHARLES BIGG, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.*

Crown 8vo. 6s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## *Thucydides Historia.* Books III. and IV.

*Edited by G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 6s.

*Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."*

## *An Introduction to Aristotle's Ethics.*

Books I.—IV. (Book X., c. vi.—ix. in an Appendix). With a Continuous Analysis and Notes. Intended for the use of Beginners and Junior Students.

*By the Rev. EDWARD MOORE, B.D., Principal of S. Edmund Hall, and late Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

## *Aristotelis Ethica Nicomachea.*

*Edidit, emendavit, crebrisque locis parallelis e libro ipso, aliisque ejusdem Auctoris scriptis, illustravit JACOBUS E. T. ROGERS, A.M.*

Small 8vo. 4s. 6d. Interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound. 6s.

## *Selections from Aristotle's Organon.*

*Edited by JOHN R. MAGRATH, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## CATENA CLASSICORUM

Crown 8vo.

*Sophoclis Tragoediae.* By R. C. JEBB, M.A.

THE ELECTRA. 3s. 6d. THE AJAX. 3s. 6d.

*Juvenalis Satirae.* By G. A. SIMCOX, M.A. 5s.*Thucydidis Historia.—Books I. & II.*

By CHARLES BIGG, M.A. 6s.

*Thucydidis Historia.—Books III. & IV.*

By G. A. SIMCOX, M.A. 6s.

*Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.* By G. H. HESLOP, M.A.

THE OLYNTHIACS. 2s. 6d. } or, in One Volume, 4s. 6d.

THE PHILIPPICS. 3s.

DE FALSA LEGATIONE. 6s.

*Demosthenis Orationes Privatae.*

By ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A.

DE CORONA. 5s.

*Aristophanis Comoediae.* By W. C. GREEN, M.A.

THE ACHARNIANS AND THE KNIGHTS. 4s.

THE WASPS. 3s. 6d. THE CLOUDS. 3s. 6d.

An Edition of THE ACHARNIANS AND THE KNIGHTS, revised and especially adapted for use in Schools. 4s.

*Isocratis Orationes.* By JOHN EDWIN SANDYS, M.A.

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS. 4s. 6d.

*Persii Satirae.* By A. PRETOR, M.A. 3s. 6d.*Homeri Ilias.* By S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A.

BOOKS I. TO XII. 6s.

*Terenti Comoediae.* By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A.

ANDRIA AND EUNUCHUS. 4s. 6d.

ANDRIA. New Edition, with Introduction on Prosody. 3s. 6d.

*Herodoti Historia.* By H. G. WOODS, M.A.

BOOK I., 6s. BOOK II., 5s.

*Horati Opera.* By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A.

VOL. I.—THE ODES, CARMEN SECULARE, AND EPODES. 7s. 6d.

*Taciti Historiae.* By W. H. SIMCOX, M.A.

BOOKS I. AND II. 6s. BOOKS III., IV., and V. [In the Press.]

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## DIVINITY MANUALS OF RELIGIOUS INSTRUCTION

*Edited by*

JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, B.D.,

CANON OF BRISTOL, CHURCH INSPECTOR OF TRAINING COLLEGES.

Each Book in Five Parts. Small 8vo. 1s. each Part.

Or in Three Volumes. 3s. 6d. each.

"Contain the maximum of requisite information within a surprising minimum of space. They are the best and fullest and simplest compilation we have hitherto examined on the subject treated."

*Standard.*

"Carefully prepared, and admirably suited for their purpose, they supply an acknowledged want in Primary Schools, and will doubtless be in great demand by the teachers for whom they are intended."

*Educational Times.*

### THE OLD TESTAMENT.

*By the Rev. E. J. GREGORY, M.A., Vicar of Halberton.*

PART I. The Creation to the Exodus. PART II. Joshua to the Death of Solomon. PART III. The Kingdoms of Judah and Israel. PART IV. Hebrew Poetry—The Psalms. PART V. The Prophets of the Captivity and of the Return—The Maccabees—Messianic Teaching of the Old Testament.

### THE NEW TESTAMENT.

*By C. T. WINTER.*

PART I. St. Matthew's Gospel. PART II. St. Mark's Gospel. PART III. St. Luke's Gospel. PART IV. St. John's Gospel. PART V. The Acts of the Apostles.

### THE PRAYER BOOK.

*By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, B.D., Canon of Bristol, &c.*

PART I. The Catechism to the end of the Lord's Prayer—The Order for Morning and Evening Prayer. PART II. The Catechism, concluding portion—The Office of Holy Baptism—The Order of Confirmation. PART III. The Theology of the Catechism—The Litany—The Office of Holy Communion. PART IV. The Collects, Epistles, and Gospels, to be used throughout the year. PART V. The Thirty-Nine Articles.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.



## *Rudiments of Theology.*

Intended to be a First Book for Students.

By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, B.D., Canon of Bristol, Church Inspector of Training Colleges.

Crown 8vo.

[Just Ready.

## *A Catechism for Young Children, Preparatory to the Use of the Church Catechism.*

By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, B.D., Canon of Bristol.

Small 8vo. 2d.

## *A Companion to the Old Testament.*

Being a plain Commentary on Scripture History down to the Birth of our Lord.

Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Also in Two Parts :

Part I.—The Creation of the World to the Reign of Saul.

Part II.—The Reign of Saul to the Birth of Our Lord.

Small 8vo. 2s. each.

[Especially adapted for use in Training Colleges and Schools.]

"A very compact summary of the Old Testament narrative, put together so as to explain the connection and bearing of its contents, and written in a very good tone ; with a final chapter on the history of the Jews between the Old and New Testa-

ments. It will be found very useful for its purpose. It does not confine itself to merely chronological difficulties, but comments freely upon the religious bearing of the text also."—*Guardian*.

## *A Companion to the New Testament.*

Small 8vo.

[In the Press.

## *The Young Churchman's Companion to the Prayer-Book.*

By the Rev. J. W. GEDGE, M.A., Diocesan Inspector of Schools for the Archdeaconry of Surrey.

Part I.—Morning and Evening Prayer and Litany.

Part II.—Baptismal and Confirmation Services.

18mo. 1s. each, or in Paper Cover, 6d.

Recommended by the late and present LORD BISHOPS OF WINCHESTER.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *A Manual of Confirmation.*

With a Pastoral Letter instructing Catechumens how to prepare themselves for their First Communion.

By EDWARD MEYRICK GOULBURN, D.D., *Dean of Norwich.*

Ninth Edition. Small 8vo. 1s. 6d.

## *The Way of Life.*

A Book of Prayers and Instruction for the Young at School. With a Preparation for Holy Communion.

*Compiled by a Priest. Edited by the Rev. T. T. CARTER, M.A., Rector of Clewer, Berks.*

16mo, 1s. 6d.

## *Household Theology.*

A Handbook of Religious Information respecting the Holy Bible, the Prayer Book, the Church, the Ministry, Divine Worship, the Creeds, &c., &c.

By the Rev. JOHN HENRY BLUNT, M.A.

New Edition. Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

## *Keys to Christian Knowledge.*

Small 8vo. 2s. 6d. each.

"Of cheap and reliable text-books of this nature there has hitherto been a great want. We are often asked to recommend books for use in Church Sunday schools, and we therefore take this opportunity of saying that we know of none more likely to be of service both to teachers and scholars than these *Keys*." — *Churchman's Shilling Magazine*.

"Will be very useful for the higher classes in Sunday schools, or rather for the fuller instruction of the Sunday-school teachers themselves, where the parish Priest is wise enough to devote a certain time regularly to their preparation for their voluntary task." — *Union Review*.

By J. H. BLUNT, M.A., Editor of the *Annotated Book of Common Prayer*.

THE HOLY BIBLE.

THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.

THE CHURCH CATECHISM.

CHURCH HISTORY, ANCIENT.

CHURCH HISTORY, MODERN.

By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, B.D., *Canon of Bristol*.

THE FOUR GOSPELS.

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.

---

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## MISCELLANEOUS

*A First German Accidence and Exercise Book.*

By J. W. J. VECQUERAY, Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

[In preparation.]

*Selections from La Fontaine's Fables.*

Edited, with English Notes at the end, for use in Schools, by P. BOWDEN-SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

[In preparation.]

*Le Maréchal de Villars, from Ste. Beuve's Causeries du Lundi.*

Edited, with English Notes at the end, for use in Schools, by H. W. EVE, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College, sometime Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

[In preparation.]

*The Campaigns of Napoleon.*The Text (in French) from M. THIERS' "*Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire*," and "*Histoire de la Révolution Française*." Edited, with English Notes, for the use of Schools, by EDWARD E. BOWEN, M.A., Master of the Modern Side, Harrow School.

With Maps. Crown 8vo.

ARCOLA. 4s. 6d.

MARENGO. 4s. 6d.

JENA. 3s. 6d.

WATERLOO. 6s.

*Selections from Modern French Authors.*

Edited, with English Notes and Introductory Notice, by HENRI VAN LAUN, Translator of Taine's HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. each.

HONORÉ DE BALZAC.

H. A. TAINÉ.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

## *The First French Book.*

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

## *The First German Book.*

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A., and J. W. FRÄDERSDORFF, Ph.D.

Seventh Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

## *The First Hebrew Book.*

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

Fourth Edition. 12mo. 7s. 6d. Key, 3s. 6d.

## *The Choristers' Guide.*

By W. A. BARRETT, Mus. Bac., Oxon., of St. Paul's Cathedral,  
Author of "*Flowers and Festivals*," &c.

Second Edition. Square 16mo. 2s. 6d.

## *Form and Instrumentation.*

By W. A. BARRETT, Mus. Bac., Oxon., Author of "*The Choristers' Guide*," &c.

Small 8vo.

[In preparation.]

these too far apart, and the intercourse of the defenders with an army of relief under the Count of Clermont at Blois was not broken off. Early in the following year, this army hoped to raise the siege by falling on a large body of provisions coming to the besiegers from Paris under Sir John Fastolf. The attack was made at Rouvray, but Fastolf had made careful preparations. The waggons were arranged in a square, and, with the stakes of the archers, formed a fortification on which the disorderly attack of the French made but little impression. Broken in the assault, they fell an easy prey to the English, as they advanced beyond their lines. The skirmish is known by the name of the Battle of the Herrings. This victory, which deprived the besieged of hope of external succour, seemed to render the capture of the city certain.

Already at the French King's court at Chinon there was talk of a hasty withdrawal to Dauphiné, Spain, or even Scotland; when suddenly there arose one of those strange effects of enthusiasm which sometimes set all calculation at defiance.

In Domrémi, a village belonging to the duchy of Bar, the inhabitants of which, though in the midst of Lorraine, a province under Burgundian influence, were of patriotic views, lived a village maiden called Joan of Arc. The period was one of great mental excitement; as in other times of wide prevailing misery, prophecies and mystical preachings were current. Joan of Arc's mind was particularly susceptible to such influences, and from the time she

was thirteen years old, she had fancied that she heard voices, and had even seen forms, sometimes of the Archangel Michael, sometimes of St. Catherine and St. Margaret, who called her to the assistance of the Dauphin. She persuaded herself that she was destined to fulfil an old prophecy which said that the kingdom, destroyed by a woman—meaning, as she thought, Queen Isabella,—should be saved by a maiden of Lorraine. The burning of Domrémi in the summer of 1428 by a troop of Burgundians at length gave a practical form to her imaginations, and early in the following year she succeeded in persuading Robert of Baudricourt to send her, armed and accompanied by a herald, to Chinon. She there, as it is said by the wonderful knowledge she displayed, convinced the court of the truth of her mission. At all events, it was thought wise to take advantage of the infectious enthusiasm she displayed, and in April she was intrusted with an army of 6000 or 7000 men, which was to march up the river from Blois to the relief of Orleans. When she appeared upon the scene of war, she supplied exactly that element of success

of all of them open by two slits turned towards the centre of the flower. Their stalks have expanded and joined together, so as to form a thin sheath round the central column (fig. 12). The dust-



Fig. 12.  
Dust-spikes of gorse (*enlarged*).

spikes are so variable in length in this flower, that it may not be possible to see that one short one comes between two long ones, though this ought to be the case.

The *seed-organ* is in the form of a longish rounded pod, with a curved neck, stretching out beyond the dust-spikes. The top of it is sticky, and if you look at a bush of gorse, you will see it projecting beyond the keel in most of the fully-blown flowers, because the neck has become more curved than in fig. 12. Cut open the pod; it contains only one cavity (not, as that of the wall-flower, two separated by a thin partition), and the grains are suspended by short cords from the top (fig. 13). These grains may be plainly seen in the seed-organ of even a young flower. It is evident that they are the most important part of the plant, as upon them depends its diffusion and multiplication. We have already seen how carefully their well-being is considered in the matter of their perfection, how even insects are pressed into their service for this purpose! Now let us glance again at our flower, and see how wonderfully contrivance is heaped upon contrivance for their protection!



Fig. 13.  
Split seed-pod of gorse.

First (see fig. 10, p. 14), we have the outer covering, so covered with hairs, that it is as good for keeping out rain as a waterproof cloak; in the buttercup, when you pressed the bud, it separated into five leaves; here there are five leaves, just the same, but they are so tightly joined that you may press till the whole bud is bent without making them separate at all, and when the bud is older, they only separate into two, and continue to enfold the flower to a certain extent till it fades. When the flower pushes back its waterproof cloak, it has the additional shelter of the big

struction, and at last, after nearly twenty years of alternate hopes and fears, of tedious negotiations, official evasions, and sterile Parliamentary debates, it was effectually extinguished by the adverse report of a Parliamentary Committee, followed by the erection of the present Millbank Penitentiary at a vastly greater expense and on a totally different system.

**Transportation.**—In the meantime the common gaols were relieved in a makeshift fashion by working gangs of prisoners in hulks at the seaports; but the resource mainly relied on for getting rid of more dangerous criminals was the old one of transportation, Botany Bay having succeeded to America. As at first employed, there was no mistake as to the reality of the punishment; the misfortune was that the worst elements in the real were not so made known as to form any part of the apparent punishment. If the judge, in sentencing the convict, had thought fit to explain, for the warning of would-be offenders, exactly what was going to be done with their associate, the sentence would have been something of this sort: "You shall first be kept, for days or months as it may happen, in a common gaol, or in the hulks, in company with other criminals better or worse than yourself, with nothing to do, and every facility for mutual instruction in wickedness. You shall then be taken on board ship with similar associates of both sexes, crammed down between decks, under such circumstances that about one in ten of you will probably die in the course of the six months' voyage. If you survive the voyage you will either be employed as a slave in some public works, or let out as a slave to some of the few free settlers whom we have induced to go out there. In either case you will be under very little regular inspection, and will have every opportunity of indulging those natural

*Relation to the Barbarians of the East* 203

wealth into the treasury. Churches remained open day and night, and frequent addresses kept up the enthusiasm to a high pitch. It was (for the moment) a genuine "revival" or reawakening of the whole Roman world. The occasion, too, appeared favourable. Italy was quiet, and the Exarchate at peace with its neighbours. Clotaire the Frank was no enemy to Heraclius, and in common with his clergy (being orthodox and not Arian) might be expected to sympathise in so holy a cause.

**Treachery of the Avars**—A.D. 616.—In one quarter only was there room for fear. The Avars were on the Danube, and the turbulence of the Avars was only equalled by their perfidy. Already, in A.D. 610, they had fallen suddenly on North Italy, and pillaged and harassed those same Lombards whom they had before helped to destroy the Gepidæ. Previous to an absence, therefore, of years from his capital, it was essential for the Emperor to sound their intentions, and, if possible, to secure their neutrality. His ambassadors were welcomed with apparent cordiality, and an interview was arranged between the Chagan and Heraclius. The place was to be Heraclea. At the appointed time the Emperor set out from Selymbria to meet the Khan, decked with Imperial crown and mantle to honour the occasion. The escort was a handful of soldiers; but there was an immense cortège of high officials and of the fashionable world of Constantinople, and the whole country side was there to see. Presently some terrified peasants were seen making their way hurriedly towards Heraclius. They urged him to flee for his life; for armed Avars had been seen in small bodies, and might even now be between him and the capital. Heraclius knew too much to hesitate. He threw off his robes and fled, and but just in time. The Chagan had laid a deep plot. A large mass of men had been told off in small detachments



I say the pulpit (in the sober use  
 Of its legitimate peculiar pow'rs)  
 Must stand acknowledg'd, while the world shall stand,  
 The most important and effectual guard,  
 Support and ornament of virtue's cause.  
 There stands the messenger of truth : there stands  
 The legate of the skies ; his theme divine,  
 His office sacred, his credentials clear.  
 By him, the violated law speaks out 340  
 Its thunders, and by him, in strains as sweet  
 As angels use, the Gospel whispers peace.  
 He establishes the strong, restores the weak,  
 Reclaims the wand'rer, binds the broken heart,  
 And, arm'd himself in panoply complete  
 Of heav'nly temper, furnishes with arms  
 Bright as his own, and trains, by ev'ry rule  
 Of holy discipline, to glorious war,  
 The sacramental host of God's elect.  
 Are all such teachers? would to heav'n all were ! 350  
 But hark—the Doctor's voice—fast wedged between  
 Two empirics he stands, and with swoln cheeks  
 Inspires the news, his trumpet. Keener far  
 Than all invective is his bold harangue,  
 While through that public organ of report  
 He hails the clergy ; and, defying shame,  
 Announces to the world his own and theirs.  
 He teaches those to read, whom schools dismiss'd,  
 And colleges, untaught ; sells accent, tone,  
 And emphasis in score, and gives to pray'r 360  
 Th' *adagio* and *andante* it demands.  
 He grinds divinity of other days  
 Down into modern use ; transforms old print  
 To zigzag manuscript, and cheats the eyes  
 Of gall'ry critics by a thousand arts.—  
 Are there who purchase of the Doctor's ware?  
 Oh name it not in Gath !—it cannot be,  
 That grave and learned Clerks should need such aid.  
 He doubtless is in sport, and does but droll,  
 Assuming thus a rank unknown before, 370  
 Grand caterer and dry-nurse of the church.

I venerate the man whose heart is warm,  
 Whose hands are pure, whose doctrine and whose life.

[COWPER'S TASK—See Page 6.]

gether as with a close seal. . . . The flakes of his flesh are joined together: they are firm in themselves; they cannot be moved."

Hobbes, in his famous book to which he gave the title *Leviathan*, symbolised thereby the force of civil society, which he made the foundation of all right.

315-325 Cowper's limitation of the province of satire—that it is fitted to laugh at foibles, not to subdue vices—is on the whole well-founded. But we cannot forget Juvenal's famous "facit indignatio versum," or Pope's no less famous—

"Yes, I am proud: I must be proud to see  
Men not afraid of God, afraid of me:  
Safe from the bar, the pulpit, and the throne,  
Yet touched and shamed by ridicule alone."

326-372 *The pulpit, not satire, is the proper corrector of sin. A description of the true preacher and his office, followed by one of the false preacher, "the reverend advertiser of engraved sermons."*

330 *Strutting and vapouring.* Cf. *Macbeth*, v. 5.

"Life's but a walking shadow, a poor player,  
That struts and frets his hour upon the stage,  
And then is heard no more; it is a tale  
Told by an idiot, full of sound and fury,  
Signifying nothing."

"And what in real value's wanting,  
Supply with vapouring and ranting."—HUDIBRAS.

331 *Proselyte.* *προσelyτος*, a new comer, a convert to Judaism.

338 *His theme divine.* Nominative absolute.

343 *Stablisthes.* Notice the complete revolution the word has made—*stabilire*, *établir*, *establish*, *stablish*; cf. *state*, &c.

346 *Of heavenly temper.* Cf. *Par. Lost*, i. 284, "his ponderous shield ethereal temper." See note on *Winter Morning Walk*, l. 664.

349 *Sacramental.* Used in the Latin sense. *Sacramentum* was the oath of allegiance of a Roman soldier. The word in its Christian sense was first applied to baptism—the vow to serve faithfully under the banner of the cross. See *Browne on the Thirty-nine Articles*, p. 576.

350 *Would to heaven.* A confusion between "would God" and "I pray to heaven."

351 A picture from the life of a certain Dr Trusler, who seems to have combined the trades of preacher, teacher of elocution, writer of sermons, and literary hack.

352 *Empirics.* *ἐμπειρικός*, one who trusts solely to experience or practice instead of rule, hence a quack. The accent is the same as in Milton (an exception to the rule. See note on *Sofa*, l. 52).

thus: if the articles had cost £1 each, the total cost would have been £2478;

∴ as they cost  $\frac{1}{3}$  of £1 each, the cost will be £2478, or £413.

The process may be written thus:

3s. 4d. is  $\frac{1}{3}$  of £1 | £2478 = cost of the articles at £1 each.

£413 = cost ..... at 3s. 4d. ...

Ex. (2). Find the cost of 2897 articles at £2. 12s. 9d. each.

£2 is 2 × £1	2897 . 0 . 0 = cost at £1 each.
10s. is $\frac{1}{2}$ of £1	5794 . 0 . 0 = ..... £2 ....
2s. is $\frac{1}{5}$ of 10s.	1448 . 10 . 0 = ..... 10s. ....
8d. is $\frac{1}{3}$ of 2s.	289 . 14 . 0 = ..... 2s. ....
1d. is $\frac{1}{8}$ of 8d.	96 . 11 . 4 = ..... 8d. ....
	12 . 1 . 5 = ..... 1d. ....
	£7640 . 16 . 9 = ..... £2. 12s. 9d. each.

NOTE.—A shorter method would be to take the parts thus:

10s. =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of £1; 2s. 6d. =  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 10s.; 3d. =  $\frac{1}{16}$  of 2s. 6d.

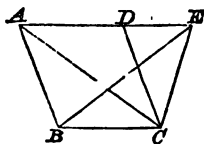
Ex. (3). Find the cost of 425 articles at £2. 18s. 4d. each.

Since £2. 18s. 4d. is the difference between £3 and 1s. 8d. (which is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of £1), the shortest course is to find the cost at £3 each, and to *subtract from it* the cost at 1s. 8d. each, thus:

£3 is 3 × £1	£ 425 . 0 . 0 = cost at £1 each.
1s. 8d. is $\frac{1}{12}$ of £1	1275 . 0 . 0 = ..... £3 ....
	35 . 8 . 4 = ..... 1s. 8d. each.
	£1239 . 11 . 8 = ..... £2. 18s. 4d. each.

## PROPOSITION XLI. THEOREM.

*If a parallelogram and a triangle be upon the same base, and between the same parallels, the parallelogram is double of the triangle.*



Let the  $\square ABCD$  and the  $\triangle EBC$  be on the same base  $BC$  and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $AE, BC$ .

*Then must  $\square ABCD$  be double of  $\triangle EBC$ .*

Join  $AC$ .

Then  $\triangle ABC = \triangle EBC$ ,  $\because$  they are on the same base and between the same  $\parallel$ s ; I. 37.

and  $\square ABCD$  is double of  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\because AC$  is a diagonal of  $ABCD$  ; I. 34.

$\therefore \square ABCD$  is double of  $\triangle EBC$ .

Q. E. D.

**Ex. 1.** If from a point, without a parallelogram, there be drawn two straight lines to the extremities of the two opposite sides, between which, when produced, the point does not lie, the difference of the triangles thus formed is equal to half the parallelogram.

**Ex. 2.** The two triangles, formed by drawing straight lines from any point within a parallelogram to the extremities of its opposite sides, are together half of the parallelogram.

[J. HAMBLIN SMITH'S GEOMETRY—See Page 11.]

## CARBONIC ANHYDRIDE.

33

Sometimes carbonic anhydride is produced in wells, and, being so much heavier than air, it remains at the bottom. If a man goes down into such a well, he will have no difficulty at first, because the air is good; but when he is near the bottom, where the gas has accumulated, he will gasp for breath and fall; and if anyone, not understanding the cause of his trouble, goes down to assist him, he too will fall senseless, and both will quickly die. The way to ascertain whether carbonic anhydride has accumulated at the bottom of a well is to let a light down into it. If it goes out, or even burns very dimly, there is enough of the gas to make the descent perilous. A man going down a well should always take a candle with him, which he should hold a considerable distance below his mouth. If the light burns dimly, he should at once stop, before his mouth gets any lower and he takes some of the gas into his lungs.

When this gas is in a well or pit, of course it must be expelled before a man can descend. There are several expedients for doing this. One is to let a bucket down frequently, turning it upside down, away from the mouth of the well, every time it is brought up, a plan which will remind you of the experiment represented in Fig. 24.

But a better way is to let down a bundle of burning straw or shavings, so as to heat the gas. Now heated bodies expand, gases very much more than solids or liquids, and, in expanding, the weight of a certain volume, say of a gallon, becomes lessened. So that if we can heat the carbonic anhydride enough to make a gallon of it weigh less than a gallon of air, it will rise out of the well just as hydrogen gas would do. Fig. 25 shows how you may perform this experiment upon a small scale.



Fig. 25.

*DISASTROUS RETREAT OF THE ENGLISH FROM CABUL.*

IT took two days of disorder, suffering, and death to carry the army, now an army no more, to the jaws of the fatal pass. Akbar Khan, who appeared like the Greeks' dread marshal from the spirit-land at intervals upon the route, here demanded four fresh hostages. The demand was acquiesced in. Madly along the narrow defile crowded the undistinguishable host, whose diminished numbers were still too numerous for speed: on every side rang the war-cry of the barbarians: on every side plundered and butchered the mountaineers: on every side, palsied with fatigue, terror, and cold, the soldiers dropped down to rise no more. The next day, in spite of all remonstrance, the general halted his army, expecting in vain provisions from Akbar Khan. That day the ladies, the children, and the married officers were given up. The march was resumed. By the following night not more than one-fourth of the original number survived. Even the haste which might once have saved now added nothing to the chances of life. In the middle of the pass a barrier was prepared. There twelve officers died sword in hand. A handful of the bravest or the strongest only reached the further side alive: as men hurry for life, they hurried on their way, but were surrounded and cut to pieces, all save a few that had yet escaped. Six officers better mounted or more fortunate than the rest, reached a spot within sixteen miles of the goal; but into the town itself rode painfully on a jaded steed, with the stump of a broken sword in his hand, but one.

LIVY, *xxi.* c. 25, § 7-10. *xxxv.* c. 30. *xxiii.* c. 24.

CÆSAR, *Bell. Gall.* v. c. 35-37.

*DEFEAT OF CHARLES THE BOLD AND MASSACRE OF HIS TROOPS AT MORAT.*

IN such a predicament braver soldiers might well have ceased to struggle. The poor wretches, Italians and Savoyards—thousand or more in number, threw away their arms and

II.

ARIADNE'S LAMENT.

Madam, 'twas Ariadne passioning  
For Theseus' perjury and unjust flight.  
TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA, IV. 4, 172.

ARGUMENT.

ARIADNE tells the story of her first waking, to find herself abandoned by Theseus and left on an unknown island, exposed to a host of dangers.—(HEROIDES, x.)

The story is beautifully told by Catullus, in the "*Epithalamium Pelei et Thetidos*:" it also forms one of the episodes in Chaucer's "*Legende of Goode Women*."

*I woke before it was day to find myself alone, no trace of my companions to be seen. In vain I felt and called for Theseus; the echoes alone gave me answer.*

	QUAE legis, ex illo, Theseu, tibi litore mitto,	
	Unde tuam sine me vela tulere ratem :	
	In quo me somnusque meus male prodidit et tu,	
	Per facinus somnis insidiate meis.	107
	Tempus erat, vitrea quo primum terra pruina	112
	Spargitur et tectae fronde queruntur aves :	
	Incertum vigilans, a somno languida, movi	97
	Thesea prensuras semisupina manus :	
	Nullus erat, referoque manus, iterumque retempto,	
10	Perque torum moveo brachia : nullus erat.	
	Excussere metus somnum : conterrita surgo,	
	Membraque sunt viduo praecipitata toro.	123
	Protinus adductis sonuerunt pectora palmis,	111
	Utque erat e somno turbida, rapta coma est.	
	Luna fuit : specto, siquid nisi litora cernam ;	
	Quod videant, oculi nil nisi litus habent.	150
	Nunc huc, nunc illuc, et utroque sine ordine curro ;	
	Alta puellares tardat arena pedes.	
	Interea toto clamanti litore "Theseu !"	121
20	Reddebant nomen concava saxa tuum,	
	Et quoties ego te, toties locus ipse vocabat :	
	Ipse locus miserae ferre volebat opem.	1063

174. **Punica poma**, pomegranates.  
 178. **Taenarum**, at the southern extremity of Peloponnesus, was one of the numerous descents to Tartarus. Cf. Virgil, Georg. IV. 467:  
     *Taenarias etiam fauces, alta ostia Ditis.*  
 179. **Factura fuit**. This periphrasis for *fecisset* is to be noted; it is the one from which the oblique forms are all constructed, e.g., *facturam fuisse*, or *factura fuisset*.  
 183. **Cessatis**, one of a goodly number of intransitive verbs of the first conjugation which have a passive participle. Cf. *erratas*, above, 139, *clamata*, 35. So Horace, *regnata Phalanto rura* (Odes, II. 6, 12); *triumphatae gentes* (Virgil).

## II.—IV.

## ARIADNE.

THIS and the two following extracts, though taken from different works, form a definite sequence. Ariadne, daughter of Minos, king of Crete, has helped Theseus to conquer the Minotaur, by giving him a clew to the maze in which the monster was hid, and, being in love with him, has fled in his company. They put in for the night to the island of Dia, and Theseus on the next morning treacherously sails away, leaving the poor girl alone. The first extract is part of an epistle which she is supposed to write on the day when she discovers his perfidy.

The name Dia, which belonged properly to a small island off the north coast of Crete, was also a poetical name for Naxos, one of the largest of the Cyclades. It may have been this fact which led to the further legend which is recounted in the next extract, how Ariadne, lorn of Theseus, becomes the bride of Bacchus; for Naxos was the home of the Bacchic worship. As the completion of the legend she is raised to share in Bacchus' divine honours, and as the Cretan Crown becomes one of the signs of the heavens.

## II.

## ARIADNE'S LAMENT.

1. **Illo**, sc. *Diae*.
4. **Per facinus**, criminally.
5. Describing apparently the early dawn, or the hour that precedes it, when the night is at its coldest, and the birds, half-awake, begin to stir in their nests. **Præna** hints that it is autumn.
7. A beautifully descriptive line—But half-awake, with all the languor of sleep still on me.  
**A somno**—after, as the *result* of.
8. **Semisupina**, on my side, lit., half on my back, describes the motion of a person thus groping about on waking. Cf. Chaucer:

Ryght in the dawaynyge awaketh shee,  
 And gropeth in the bed, and fonde ryghte noghta.



55. haec mea magna fides? at non, Euandre, pudendis  
 vulneribus pulsum aspicias, nec sospite dirum  
 optabis nato funus pater. ei mihi, quantum  
 praesidium Ausonia, et quantum tu perdis, Iule!
- Haec ubi deflevit, tolli miserabile corpus
- 60 imperat, et toto lectos ex agmine mittit  
 mille viros, qui supremum comitentur honorem,  
 intersintque patris lacrimis, solacia luctus  
 exigua ingentis, misero set debita patri.  
 haut segnes alii crates et molle feretrum
- 65 arbuteis texunt virgis et vimine querno,  
 extructosque toros obtentu frondis inumbrant.  
 hic iuvenem agresti sublimem stramine ponunt;  
 qualem virgineo demessum pollice florem  
 seu mollis violae, seu languentis hyacinthi,
- 70 cui neque fulgor adhuc, nec dum sua forma recessit;  
 non iam mater alit tellus, viresque ministrat.  
 tunc geminas vestes auroque ostroque rigentis  
 extulit Aeneas, quas illi laeta laborum  
 ipsa suis quondam manibus Sidonia Dido
- 75 fecerat, et tenui telas discreverat auro.  
 harum unam iuveni supremum maestus honorem  
 induit, arsurasque comas obnubit amictu;  
 multaque praeterea Laurentis praemia pugnae  
 aggerat, et longo praedam iubet ordine duci.
- 80 addit equos et tela, quibus spoliaverat hostem.  
 vinxerat et post terga manus, quos mitteret umbris.  
 inferias, caeso sparsuros sanguine flammam;  
 indutosque iubet truncos hostilibus armis  
 ipsos ferre duces, inimicaque nomina figi.
- 85 ducitur infelix aevo confectus Acoetes,  
 pectora nunc foedans pugnis, nunc unguibus ora;  
 sternitur et toto proiectus corpore terrae.

Comp. *Geor.* ii. 80, *Nec longum tempus et . . . exiit . . . arbos*, C. But as these are the only two instances of the construction adduced it is perhaps safer to take *et* = even.

51 *nili iam*, etc.] The father is making vows to heaven in his son's behalf, but the son is gone where vows are neither made nor paid.

55 *haec mea magna fides*] 'Is this the end of all my promises?' *Magna* may be taken as 'solemn,' or 'boastful.'

*pudendis vulneribus*] All his wounds are on his breast.

56 *ditum optabilis funus = morti devovebis*. Compare the meaning of *dirae*, xii. 845.

59-99] A description of the funeral rites. Aeneas bids his last farewell.

59 *Haec ubi deservit*] 'His moan thus made.' *De* in composition has two opposite meanings: (1) cessation from or removal of the fundamental ideas, as in *decreasco*, *dedocco*, etc.; (2) (as here) in intensifying, as *debello*, *demiror*, *desaevio*.

61 *honorem*] *Honos* is used by V. for (1) a sacrifice, iii. 118; (2) a hymn, *Geor.* ii. 393; (3) beauty, *Aen.* x. 24; (4) the 'leafy honours' of trees, *Geor.* ii. 404; (5) funeral rites, vi. 333, and here. See below, l. 76.

63 *solatia*] In apposition to the whole sentence; whether it is nom. or acc. depends on how we resolve the principal sentence; here, though *solatia* applies to the whole sentence, its construction probably depends on the last clause, which we may paraphrase, *ut praesentes (τὸ μετεῖναι) sint solatia*; therefore it is nom.

64 *crates et molle feretrum*] The bier of pliant osier: cf. l. 22.

66] Cf. Statius, *Theb.* vi. 55, *torus et puerile feretrum*.

*obtentu frondis*] 'A leafy canopy.' C. understands 'a layer of leaves.'

67 *agresti stramine*] 'The rude litter.'

68] Cf. ix. 435; *Il.* viii. 306,

μήκων δ' ὥς ἐτέρωσε κάρη βάλεν, ἥτ' ἐνὶ κήπεῳ  
καρπὸν βριθομένην νοτίησί τε εἰαρινήσιν·  
ὥς ἐτέρωσ' ἤμυσσε κάρη πύληκι βαρυνθέν.

'Even as a flower,  
Poppy or hyacinth, on its broken stem  
Languidly raises its encumbered head.'—MILMAN.

69 *languentis hyacinthi*] The rhythm is Greek. The 'drooping hyacinth' is probably the *Lilium Martagon* or Turk's-cap lily, 'the sanguine flower inscribed with woe.'

70] 'That hath not yet lost its gloss nor all its native loveliness.' *Recessit* must apply to both clauses. 'If we suppose the two parts of the line to contain a contrast, the following line will lose much of its force,' C. Compare the well-known lines from the *Giour*, 'He who hath bent him o'er the dead,' etc.

71] Contrast the force of *neque adhuc*, *nec dum*, and *non iam*; 'the brightness not all gone,' 'the lines where beauty lingers,' and 'the support and nurture of mother earth cut off once and for all.'

34-42] *The Meal in Simon's House.* 89

36. *ἵνα φάγῃ*] In modern Greek, which properly speaking has no infinitive, the sense of the infinitive is expressed by *νά* (*ἵνα*) with subjunctive (as in this passage), e.g. *ἐπιθυμῶ νὰ γράφῃ*, 'I wish him to write;' see Corfe's *Modern Greek Grammar*, p. 78. This extension of the force of *ἵνα* to oblique petition, and even to consecutive clauses, may be partly due to the influence of the Latin *ut*; cf. ch. xvi. 27, *ἐρωτῶ οὖν, πᾶτερ, ἵνα πέμψῃς*: see note on ch. iv. 3.

The following incident is recorded by St. Luke alone. Simon the Pharisee is not to be identified with Simon the leper, Matt. xxvi., Mark xiv. 3.

*ἀνεκλίθη*] The Jews had adopted the Roman, or rather Greek, fashion of reclining at meals—a sign of advancing luxury and of Hellenism, in which however even the Pharisee acquiesces.

37. *γυνή*] There is no proof that this woman was Mary Magdalene. But mediæval art has identified the two, and great pictures have almost disarmed argument in this as in other incidents of the gospel narrative.

38. *ἀλάβαστρον*] The neuter sing. is Hellenistic. The classical form is *ἀλάβαστρος* with a heteroclitic plural *ἀλάβαστρα*, hence probably the late sing. *ἀλάβαστρον*. The grammarian stage of a language loves uniformity, Herod. iii. 20; Theocr. xv. 114:

*Συρίω δὲ μύρω χρύσει' ἀλάβαστρα.*

*στᾶσα παρὰ τοὺς πόδας αὐτοῦ*] This would be possible from the arrangement of the triclinium.

39. *ἐγίνωσκεν ἂν*] 'Would (all the while) have been recognising.'

40. *χρεωφειλέται*] A late word; the form varies between *χρεωφειλέται* and *χρεοφειλέται*.

41. *δηνάριον*] The denarius was a silver coin originally containing ten ases (deni), afterwards, when the weight of the as was reduced, sixteen ases. Its equivalent modern value is reckoned at 7½d. But such calculations are misleading; it is more to the point to regard the denarius as an average day's pay for a labourer.

42. *μὴ ἔχόντων*] Because *he saw that* they had not. *ἐχαρίσατο*] Cf. v. 21.

# INDEX

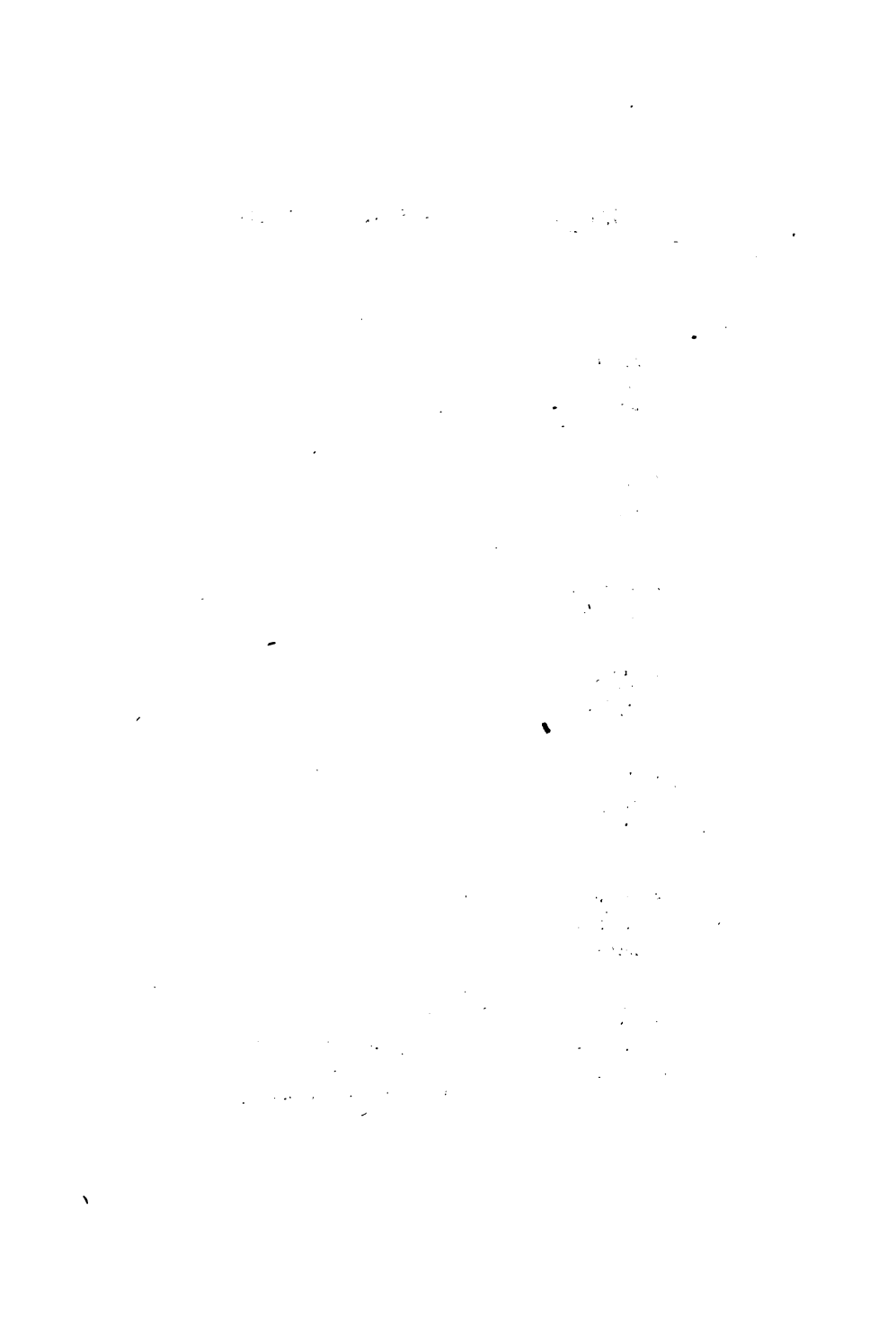
	PAGE		PAGE
HISTORY . . . . .	1	LATIN . . . . .	14
ENGLISH . . . . .	6	GREEK . . . . .	18
MATHEMATICS . . . . .	9	CATENA CLASSICORUM . . . . .	26
SCIENCE . . . . .	12	DIVINITY . . . . .	27
MISCELLANEOUS . . . . .		30	

	PAGE		PAGE
ABBOTT (Evelyn), Selections from Lucian . . . . .	19	Creighton (M.), Historical Bio- graphies . . . . .	5
— Elements of Greek Accidence . . . . .	18	Crusius' Homeric Lexicon, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	21
— Elementary Greek Grammar . . . . .	18	Curteis (A.M.), The Roman Empire . . . . .	3
Alford (Dean), Greek Testament . . . . .	23	DALLIN (T. F.) and Sargent (J. Y.), Materials and Models, &c. . . . .	16, 21
Anson (W. R.), Age of Chatham . . . . .	4	Davys (Bishop), History of England . . . . .	5
— Age of Pitt . . . . .	4	Demosthenes, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	22
Aristophanes, by W. C. Green . . . . .	24, 26	— by G. H. Heslop . . . . .	22, 26
— Scenes from, by Arthur Sidgwick . . . . .	20	— by Arthur Holmes . . . . .	22, 26
Aristotle's Ethics, by Edward Moore . . . . .	25	ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS, edited by Francis Storr . . . . .	6, 7
— by J. E. T. Rogers . . . . .	25	Euclid, by J. Hamblin Smith . . . . .	11
— Organon, by J. R. Magrath . . . . .	25	Euripides, Scenes from, by Arthur Sidgwick . . . . .	20
Arnold (T. K.), Cornelius Nepos . . . . .	15	Eve (H. W.), Ste. Beuve's <i>Maréchal de Villars</i> . . . . .	30
Crusius' Homeric Lexicon . . . . .	21	FIRMAN (F. B.), and Sanderson (L.), Zeugma . . . . .	18
Demosthenes . . . . .	22	Foster (George Carey), Electricity Sound . . . . .	12
Eclogæ Ovidianæ . . . . .	16	Frädersdorff (J. W.) English-Greek Lexicon . . . . .	25
English-Greek Lexicon . . . . .	25	GANTILLON (P. G. F.), Classical Ex- amination Papers . . . . .	16, 22
English Prose Composition . . . . .	8	Gedge (J. W.), Young Churchman's Companion to the Prayer Book . . . . .	28
First French Book . . . . .	31	Gepp (C. G.), Latin Elegiac Verse . . . . .	15
First German Book . . . . .	31	Girdlestone (W. H.), Arithmetic . . . . .	11
First Greek Book . . . . .	31	Gooden (W. T.), and Rigg (A.), Chemistry . . . . .	13
First Hebrew Book . . . . .	31	Goulburn (Dean), Manual of Con- firmation . . . . .	29
First Verse Book . . . . .	15	Greek Testament, by Dean Alford . . . . .	23
Greek Accidence . . . . .	19	— by Chr. Wordsworth . . . . .	23
Greek Prose Composition . . . . .	19	Green (W. C.), Aristophanes . . . . .	24, 26
Henry's First Latin Book . . . . .	15	Gross (E. J.), Algebra, Part II. . . . .	10
Homer for Beginners . . . . .	21	— Kinematics and Kinetics . . . . .	10
Homer's Iliad . . . . .	21	HERODOTUS (Stories from), by J. Surtees Phillpotts . . . . .	19
Latin Prose Composition . . . . .	15	— by H. G. Woods . . . . .	24, 26
Madvig's Greek Syntax . . . . .	23	Heslop (G. H.), Demosthenes . . . . .	22, 26
Sophocles . . . . .	24	Historical Biographies, edited by M. Creighton . . . . .	5
BARRETT (W. A.), Chorister's Guide . . . . .	31	Historical Handbooks, edited by Oscar Browning . . . . .	2-4
— Form and Instrumentation . . . . .	31	Holmes (Arthur), Demosthenes . . . . .	22, 26
Bigg (Ch.), Exercises in Latin Prose . . . . .	14	— Rules for Latin Pronunciation . . . . .	14
Thucydides . . . . .	25, 26	Homer for Beginners, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	21
Blunt (J. H.), Household Theology . . . . .	29	Homer's Iliad, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	21
— Keys to Christian Knowledge: The Holy Bible, The Prayer Book, Church History (Ancient and Modern), Church Catechism . . . . .	29	— by S. H. Reynolds. 21, Book vi, by J. S. Phillpotts . . . . .	21
Bowen (E. E.), Campaigns of Napo- leon . . . . .	30	Horace, by J. M. Marshall . . . . .	1
Bridge (C.), History of French Literature . . . . .	2		
Bright (J. Franck), English History . . . . .	1		
— Hist. of French Revolution . . . . .	4		
Browning (Oscar), Great Rebellion . . . . .	4		
— Historical Handbooks . . . . .	2-4		
Building Construction, Notes on . . . . .	13		
CALVERT (E.), Selections from Livy . . . . .	15		
Carr (A.), Notes on Greek Testament . . . . .	23		
Child's Catechism, by Canon Norris . . . . .	28		
Companion to the New Testament . . . . .	28		
Companion to the Old Testament . . . . .	28		
Cornelius Nepos, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	15		
Crake (A. D.), History of the Church . . . . .	5		

# INDEX.

	PAGE
IOPHON . . . . .	19
Isocrates, by J. E. Sandys . . . . .	22, 26
JEBB (R. C.), Sophocles . . . . .	24, 26
Supremacy of Athens . . . . .	27, 26
Juvenal, by G. A. Simcox . . . . .	29
KEYS TO CHRISTIAN KNOWLEDGE	
Kitchener (F. E.), Botany for Class	12
Teaching . . . . .	13
(F. A.), a Year's Botany . . . . .	30
LA FONTAINE'S FABLES, by P.	
Bowden-Smith . . . . .	14
Latin Pronunciation, Rules for, by	
Arthur Holmes . . . . .	14
Latin Sentence Construction . . . . .	30
Laun (Henri Van), French Selections	
Lavery's (W. H.), Astronomy . . . . .	12
Livy, Selections from, by R. Saward	
and E. Calvert . . . . .	15
Lucian, by Evelyn Abbott . . . . .	19
MADVIG'S GREEK SYNTAX, by T. K.	
Arnold . . . . .	23
Magrath (J. R.), Aristotle's Organon	
Mansfield (E. D.), Latin Sentence	
Construction . . . . .	14
Manuals of Religious Instruction,	
edited by J. P. Norris . . . . .	27
Marshall (J. M.), Horace . . . . .	17, 26
Moberly (Charles E.), Shakspeare . . . . .	8
Alexander the Great in the	
Punjab . . . . .	19
Moore (Edward), Aristotle's Ethics . . . . .	25
NORRIS (J. P.), Key to the Gospels	
to the Acts . . . . .	29
Manuals of Religious	
Instruction . . . . .	27
Child's Catechism . . . . .	28
Rudiments of Theology . . . . .	28
OVID, Stories from, by R. W. Taylor	
Ovidianæ Eclogæ, by T. K. Arnold	
PAPILLON (T. L.), Terence . . . . .	17, 26
Pearson (Charles), English History	
in the XIVth Century . . . . .	3
Pelham (H. F.), The Roman Revo-	
lution . . . . .	4
Phillipotts (J. Surtees), Stories from	
Herodotus . . . . .	19
Shakspeare's Tempest . . . . .	8
Homæi Iliad, Book VI . . . . .	21
Pretor (A.), Persii Satiræ . . . . .	17, 26
REID (J. S.), History of Roman	
Political Institutions . . . . .	4
Reynolds (S. H.), Homer's Iliad . . . . .	21, 26
Richardson (G.), Conic Sections . . . . .	11
Rigg (A.), and Gooden (W. T.),	
Introduction to Chemistry . . . . .	13
Rigg (A.), Science Class-books . . . . .	12
Rivington's Mathematical Series . . . . .	9
Rogers (J. E. T.), Aristotle's Ethics . . . . .	25
STE. BRUYE'S Maréchal de Villars,	
by H. W. Eve . . . . .	30
Sanderson (L.), and Firman (F. B.),	
Zeugma . . . . .	18
Sandys (J. E.), Isocrates . . . . .	22, 26
Sargent (J. V.) and Dallin (T. F.),	
Materials and Models, &c. . . . .	16, 21

	PAGE
Sargent (J. V.) and Dallin (T. F.),	
Greek Version of Selected Pieces . . . . .	21
Latin Version of (60)	
Selected Pieces . . . . .	16
Saward (R.), Selections from Livy . . . . .	15
Science Class Books . . . . .	12
Shakspeare's As You Like It, Mac-	
beth, and Hamlet, by C. E.	
Moberly . . . . .	8
Coriolanus, by R. Whitelaw	
Tempest, by J. S. Phillpotts	
Merchant of Venice, by R. W.	
Taylor . . . . .	8
Sidgwick (Arthur), Scenes from	
Greek Plays . . . . .	20
Introduction to	
Greek Prose Composition . . . . .	18
Simcox (G. A.), Juvenal . . . . .	17, 26
Thucydides . . . . .	25, 26
Simcox (W. H.), Tacitus . . . . .	17, 26
Smith (J. H.), Arithmetic . . . . .	10
Key to Arithmetic . . . . .	10
Elementary Algebra . . . . .	10
Key to Elementary	
Algebra . . . . .	10
Enunciations . . . . .	11
Exercises on Algebra . . . . .	10
Hydrostatics . . . . .	11
Geometry . . . . .	11
Statics . . . . .	11
Trigonometry . . . . .	11
(P. Bowden), La Fontaine's	
Fables . . . . .	30
(Philip V.), History of English	
Institutions . . . . .	2
(R. Prowde), Latin Prose Ex-	
ercises . . . . .	14
Sophocles, by T. K. Arnold . . . . .	24
by R. C. Jebb . . . . .	24, 26
Storr (Francis), English School	
Classics . . . . .	6, 7
English Grammar . . . . .	8
Greek Verbs . . . . .	18
Virgil's Æneid, . . . . .	
Books XI. XII. . . . .	16
TACITUS, by W. H. Simcox . . . . .	17, 26
Taylor (R. W.), Stories from Ovid . . . . .	16
Merchant of Venice . . . . .	8
Terence, by T. L. Papillon . . . . .	17, 26
Thiers' Campaigns of Napoleon, by	
E. E. Bowen . . . . .	30
Thucydides, by C. Bigg . . . . .	25, 26
by G. A. Simcox . . . . .	25, 26
VECQUERAY (J. W. J.), First Ger-	
man Accidence . . . . .	30
WAY OF LIFE . . . . .	29
Whitelaw (Robert), Shakspeare's Co-	
riolanus . . . . .	8
Willert (F.), Reign of Louis XI. . . . .	4
Wilson (R. K.), History of Modern	
English Law . . . . .	3
Woods (H. G.), Herodotus . . . . .	24, 26
Wordsworth (Bp.), Greek Testament . . . . .	23
YOUNG (Sir G.), History of the United	
States . . . . .	4



## Keys to Christian Knowledge

*Small 8vo. 2s. 6d. each.*

*A Key to the Knowledge and Use of the Book of Common Prayer.* By John Henry Blunt, M.A., F.S.A., Editor of "The Annotated Book of Common Prayer."

*A Key to the Knowledge and Use of the Holy Bible.* By John Henry Blunt, M.A.

*A Key to the Knowledge of Church History* (Ancient). Edited by John Henry Blunt, M.A.

*A Key to the Knowledge of Church History* (Modern). Edited by John Henry Blunt, M.A.

*A Key to Christian Doctrine and Practice.* (Founded on the Church Catechism.) By John Henry Blunt, M.A.

*A Key to the Narrative of the Four Gospels.* By John Pilkington Norris, M.A., Canon of Bristol, formerly one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools.

*A Key to the Narrative of the Acts of the Apostles.* By John Pilkington Norris, M.A.

---

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •

# Rivington's Mathematical Series

12mo.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.,

OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, AND LATE LECTURER AT ST. PETER'S COLLEGE,  
CAMBRIDGE.

## *Algebra.*

Part I. 3s. Without Answers, 2s. 6d.

## *Key to Algebra.* Part II.

[In the Press.]

## *Exercises on Algebra.*

Part I. 2s. 6d. [Copies may be had without the Answers.]

## *Elementary Trigonometry.*

4s. 6d.

## *Elementary Hydrostatics.*

3s.

## *Elements of Geometry.*

Containing Books I to 6, and portions of Books II and III of  
EUCLID, with Exercises and Notes. 3s. 6d.

Part I., containing Books I and 2 of EUCLID, limp cloth, 1s. 6d.,  
may be had separately.

## *Elementary Statics.*

3s.

## *Arithmetic.*

*Second Edition, revised.* 3s. 6d.

---

By E. J. GROSS, M.A.,

FELLOW OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

## *Algebra.* Part II.

*Crown 8vo.*

[In the Press.]

---

By G. RICHARDSON, M.A.,

ASSISTANT MASTER AT WINCHESTER COLLEGE, AND LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S  
COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

## *Geometrical Conic Sections.*

*Crown 8vo.* 4s. 6d.

*Other Works are in Preparation.*

---

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •



